







# **Spanish for Beginners**

THIS BOOK INCLUDES :

Learn Spanish for Beginners

Spanish Short Stories for Beginners

The Complete Beginners Guide to Learn  
Spanish Starting from Zero and Become  
Fluent in just 7 Days

**© Copyright 2020 by Fern á ndez Language Institute - All rights reserved.**

The content contained within this book may not be reproduced, duplicated or transmitted without direct written permission from the author or the publisher.

Under no circumstances will any blame or legal responsibility be held against the publisher, or author, for any damages, reparation, or monetary loss due to the information contained within this book. Either directly or indirectly.

**Legal Notice:**

This book is copyright protected. This book is only for personal use. You cannot amend, distribute, sell, use, quote or paraphrase any part, or the content within this book, without the consent of the author or publisher.

**Disclaimer Notice:**

Please note the information contained within this document is for educational and entertainment purposes only. All effort has been executed to present accurate, up to date, and reliable, complete information. No warranties of any kind are declared or implied. Readers acknowledge that the author is not engaging in the rendering of legal, financial, medical or professional advice. The content within this book has been derived from various sources. Please consult a licensed professional before attempting any techniques outlined in this book.

By reading this document, the reader agrees that under no circumstances is the author responsible for any losses, direct or indirect, which are incurred as a result of the use of information contained within this document, including, but not limited to, — errors, omissions, or inaccuracies.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## Learn Spanish for Beginners

### Introduction

### Chapter 1 - Articles and Adjectives

### Chapter 2 - Preposiciones (Prepositions)

### Chapter 3 - Prepositions and Directions

Using the preposition 'de'

Using the preposition 'a'

The Personal A

When to use 'para' and 'por'

Asking and offering directions in Spanish

### Chapter 4 - Personal Pronouns

### Chapter 5 - Verbs

Regular -AR Verbs

Regular -ER Verbs

Regular -IR Verbs

Using Spanish Verbs

*Common Regular -AR Verbs*

*Common Regular -ER Verbs*

*Common Regular -IR Verbs*

### Chapter 6 - The Use of Numbers, Colors, Time and Feelings

Counting in Spanish

Describing With Colors

Telling the Time

Expressing Feelings

### Chapter 7 - Nature, Animals and Geography.

Plants

Animals (farm, sea, pets etc)

*Now practice these tongue-twisters about animals.*

Geography and Landscapes

Towns (main towns and capitals around the globe)

## **Chapter 8 - Education**

PART 1.

PART 2.

## **Chapter 9 - How to Write in Spanish**

Benefits of Writing in Spanish

Write to Other People

Write to Yourself

Keep a Journal

Write Yourself Daily Reminders

Put Your Phone, Calendar, Facebook in Spanish

Write Your Lists in Spanish

Read, Then Write

Write, Then Speak

Learn “Real” Spanish

Idioms

## **Chapter 10 - Asking Everyday Questions**

Asking Questions

What You Do- Talking about Your Vocation

*Career Vocabulary*

*Asking and Answering about Jobs*

Where Are You Going?

*The Verb “Ir”*

*Places Vocabulary*

*Using “Ir” for the Future*

Basic Conversations

## **Chapter 11 - The Imperative and Subjunctive Moods**

Indicative Mood

Subjunctive Mood

Imperative Mood

## **Chapter 12 - Preguntando Lugares Turísticos - Asking for Tourist Places**

Visita a la playa- Visit to the beach

Visita a la montaña- Visit to the mountain

Visita al parque de diversiones- Visit to the Amusement Park

Visita al Museo- Visit to the Museum

Día de relajación- Relax day

### **Chapter 13 - Spanish Language Quirks**

Apocopation

Comparatives and superlatives

*Older and younger*

*Best and worst*

### **Chapter 14 - Restaurant — Restaurante**

### **Chapter 15 - Professions — Profesiones**

### **Chapter 16- Transportation — Transporte**

### **Chapter 17 - Yes, No, Please, Thanks: Basic Vocabulary**

What's Happening? The Present Tense (Part I)

What's Happening?: The Present Tense (Part II)

### **Chapter 18 - Practice makes Perfect**

Traditional Methods of Practice

Language Exchange

Ask a stranger

Unconventional Approaches

*Call restaurants and bakeries*

*Get on the Phone*

*Take it to the Kitchen*

*Help Others*

### **Chapter 19 - A Day in the Life of a Language Learner**

*Listening Skills*

*Grammar Skills*

*Writing Practice and Vocabulary*

*Reading*

*Morning*

*Afternoon*

*Evening*

### **Conclusion**



# Spanish Short Stories for Beginners

## Introduction

1. Present Simple with “AR” Verbs

2. La Mejor Cita – The Best Date

3. El Lado Malo De Los Pasatiempos

4. Quedarse En Casa

5. De Viaje

6. El Huevo Podrido

7. Nuevos Amigos

8. La Gran Noticia

9. Salir Con Los Amigos

10. La Lectura Del Testamento

11. Granja Los Villalobos

12. Los Piratas Del Bufón Errante (Torpes En Tierra Y En Mar)

13. Intuición En Custodia

14. Ella Siempre Me Supera.

15. La Muerte Los Sigue

16. Playa, Salsa Y Ron

Conclusion

# **Learn Spanish for Beginners**

The complete beginners guide to speak Spanish in just 7 days starting from zero.  
Includes the most common Spanish words and phrases.

# Introduction

Spanish has a great many salutations and the one who you use depends upon a number of variables, of course.

There's, of course, the generally used *hola* (oh-la). This just means "hello" in English. The etymology of the word "hola" is deeply interesting, but it's of course beyond the scope of this book.

Anyhow, there are also the greetings which have to do with the time of day. There is *buenos días* (bwey-nohs di-ahs). This means literally "good morning" and is one of the more common Spanish greetings aside from *hola*. There also is *buenas tardes* (bwey-nahs tar-dehs), which means good evening. This isn't used as often as a conventional salutation, though it certainly can be used with no problem. The last one in this category is *buenas noches* (bwey-nahs no-chess). This means literally "good night" and its usage is unwavering. You generally will only use this as a goodbye to somebody for the night is you know that you won't be seeing them again that night, if that is the case you should use the word "*adiós*" first; for not to confuse it with a greetings.

Lastly, there is *muy buenos* . (moy bwey-nohs). This is a very general greeting as compared to other ones such as *buenos días* and *hola*. You can use this greeting at pretty much any time of day whenever you indicate the corresponding time of day, after using this words "days", "evenings" and "nights" in the end.

So after all of that, we're now officially in the conversation, engaging in the nigh professional art of small talk. These small talk sessions generally almost always start by asking somebody how they are or how they're doing. There are a ton of ways to ask this sort of question in Spanish.

Firstly, there are the more formal routes to be taken. To simply ask "How are you?", you first need to think about who you're talking to. Are you speaking to somebody your age? Younger? Older? Have you met them before? Then you need to pick either the informal or the formal way to ask based upon your evaluations. The informal way to ask is to simply "*¿Cómo estas ?*" (co-moh es-tahs), meaning in a literal sense "how are you?". The

formal way is just the usual inversion of the prior question: *¿Cómo está usted ?* (co-moh es-ta oos-ted). This means the same thing as before, but this version is of course to be reserved for meeting new people or for talking to people who are in a position of superiority.

On top of that, there are more casual ways to ask. You could say “how’s it going?”: *¿Cómo te va ?* (co-moh teh va)

Simply asking “what’s up?” is certainly not out of the question: *¿Qué tal ?* (kay tall)

Neither would be asking something along the lines of “what’s happening?”- *¿Qué pasa ?* (kay pah-sah) - or “How have you been?”: *¿Cómo has ido ?* (co-moh ahs ee-do)

All in all, there are a ton of ways to ask somebody exactly how they’re doing in Spanish. There are likewise a huge number of ways in which you could respond to this very question. Note that being in a foreign country or situation means that the culture is inevitably different; in America and England, when we ask “how are you?”, we do so as a courtesy and generally not in the seeking of a very well-thought out response or any sort of genuine emotional discourse. Certain other countries aren’t like this, and if you ask how they are, they’ll tell you how they are.

But for all intents and purposes, you may or may not give a very deep response. Should you choose to go with a more “standard” response, there are a number of different ways in which you could phrase it.

You could start with the quintessential *bien, gracias* (byen, grah-see-as) which means simply “well/fine, thank you.” You could also opt for “very well” by saying *muy bien* (moy byen). You could insert a certain amount of nihilistic apathy into your conversation by saying *Como siempre* which technically means “like always” but carries the weight more like “I am as I always seem to be.” If you’re not feeling well, you can say that you’re sick by saying either *estoy enfermo* or *estoy enferma* depending upon your gender, men saying the first and women saying the second. And if you’re not doing too well, you could say *más o menos* (moss oh men-ohs) meaning “so-so”, or you could say *mal* which translates to simply “badly” or “poorly”.

Then, there are multiple different ways in which you could say goodbye. There are a few generally used ones, and a few which are geared towards more special purposes.

The two general purpose ones that you need to know are *adiós* and *chao*. Both are common enough that I'm not going to tell you how to pronounce them. If you're on the up, you very well may notice a parallel between Spanish and neighboring Romance language Italian here, where *ciao* is used as a form of goodbye. Both of these are acceptable ways to say goodbye. This may also vary depending on the intimacy of the conversation.

If you'll be seeing the person soon, you could tell them *Hasta pronto* (ahs-tah pronto). But when I say soon, I mean soon. This is one place where the common conception of "soon" as used in the U.S. or Britain generally doesn't cut it in other timetables.

If you're just going to see them at a later point in time, you could say *Hasta luego* (ahs-tah lwey-go). This could imply a lack of certainty about when you'll meet again, however. It, as many things do, ultimately depends upon the context in which it's used.

The last one we're going to talk about here is *Hasta la vista* (ahs-tah lah vees-tah, but honestly, who doesn't know how to pronounce this one thanks to Hollywood?). This phrase means essentially "Until next time" or "until we meet again". This one too can communicate a lack of certainty dependent upon the context.

On top of all of that, there are some essential phrases that you have absolutely got to know in order to ask for help in Spanish, or otherwise get around.

Firstly, there are two forms of "excuse me" you need to know. The first, *perdón*, means "excuse me" in the sense of "excuse me, could I ask you about something?"

The other form of excuse me, *con permiso*, has a meaning more along the lines of "Please excuse me", when you're needing somebody to move out of your way.

You also need to know how to say thank you and sorry. In fact, more people need to know how to do this in their native language. The way that you say

“thank you” in Spanish is easy: *Gracias* . Nearly everybody knows that term. And the way you say sorry is additionally simple: *Lo siento* (lo syen-toh).

It’s most certainly also worth you learning how to say please in Spanish because you invariably are going to need to at some point. You do so by saying *por favor* . (pour fah-vor)

And lastly, at some point, eventually you’re going to have to ask for help in some way. The way to do this is by saying *necesito ayuda* (ney-cess-ee-toh ah-you-dah). This means literally “I need help” or “I need aid”.

There’s a lot of things you’ll need to learn before you’re ready for the streets, but hopefully now, you’ve got a solid enough foundation you can at least be courteous.

# Chapter 1 - Articles and Adjectives

So, before we dissect those, we need to dissect one essential linguistic topic: gendering of nouns. Noun gendering is something that is lost entirely in modern English but was around in Old and Early Middle English, as well as sticking around heavily in other Germanic languages. The loss of gendering in English nouns is a particularly peculiar case because it's very difficult to beg to mind almost any other European languages which so finitely and resolutely lack a gendered noun system in the modern day. Regardless, the point is that you're unfamiliar with this sort of thing.

The idea of nouns having genders can be a little confusing at first - for example, what makes a banana innately masculine while a table is innately feminine? Well, in brief, almost nothing. Gendered nouns have very little to do with actual sex in the biological sense (unless used to refer to a living entity) and more-so to do with the notion of tone harmony. In other words, this is yet another holdover from other languages far more ancient and difficult than ours. Tone harmony is the essential idea that different parts of a sentence should sound similarly so as to make the sentence more sonically appealing and in general, just more soothing to the ears than it would be otherwise. This relatively simple concept has had a huge bearing on the languages of today, whether they're Germanic, Romantic, or a member of any other variety of language families.

What's more is that sometimes the noun genders are completely and totally arbitrary. This isn't all the time, though - in fact, it's a vast minority of the overall cases. Most of the time, there are recognizable patterns in reference to a noun's gender and the overall tone of the word. These are things that you'll begin to pick up intuitively as you learn more and more about Spanish and practice with the language more in general.

So, now, let's actually start talking about nouns. In English, nouns often have corresponding markers. These markers are referred to as articles, and they are used in a general manner to denote the plurality and definitiveness of a verb. Plurality, of course, refers to the number of a given verb. For example, we would never say "a blueberries" in English - we would say "some blueberries." Plurality matters when it comes to articles.

Definitiveness is a bit of a harder topic to try to explain. Definitiveness refers to how resolute you are in reference to a specific noun. The best comparison that could be made is a sentence like “Could you hand me article book?” If you were to say “Could you hand me a book?” there is no specific reference in mind. You are asking for any book. While you may be referring to a specific title, it’s presumed that there is a stack of that title and you’re just asking for a copy. On the other hand, if you were to say “could you hand me the book?” it would seem as though you were referencing a particular book, often denoted by the circumstances. These are the two lines upon which articles are divided in English. However, Spanish has yet another delineation in terms of which articles work where and when.

This delineation is based upon the gender of the nouns in question. Spanish has two noun genders: masculine and feminine. Once upon a time, there was also a neuter noun, but this was long, long time ago. The system would simplify and give us what we know today.

So this means that which article you use is based on three different factors: the definitiveness, the plurality, and the gender of the noun. Fortunately, the more that you work with this specific concept, the more and more naturally it will come.

In terms of study, these nouns are usually divided into indefinite and definite. From there, they are organized by gender and plurality. For the purposes of study, we’re going to be using the feminine noun *fresa* (for strawberry) and the masculine noun *damasco* (for apricot).

First, we will learn the indefinite articles:

Indefinite:

Masculine singular (an apricot) - *Un damasco*

Feminine singular (a strawberry) - *Una fresa*

Masculine plural (some apricots) - *Unos damascos*

Feminine plural (some strawberries) - *Unas fresas*

Next, we’ll learn the definite articles.



Definite:

Masculine singular (the apricot) - *El damasco*

Feminine singular (the strawberry) - *La fresa*

Masculine plural (the apricots) - *Los damascos*

Feminine plural (the strawberries) - *Las fresas*

Using this, we're finally starting to understand the basics of Spanish nouns. Just like in English, nouns in Spanish can be either the subject or the object.

For example, you can say I want the strawberry:

*Quiero la fresa.*

Or you can say The strawberry is red.

*La fresa es roja.*

You see? It's actually pretty simple! Definitely not the hardest thing we've worked on so far in this book. This is another case where a little practice goes a long way.

The last Spanish sentence that we covered actually provides us a nice segue into the following topic: adjectives. Adjectives as a grammatical concept are likely already familiar to you - they're just words which describe something in one way or another. In Spanish and other Romance languages, they act a little differently to the way that they do in English.

An example of an English adjective would be something like "The man is tall." In English, though, we can just use tall to apply to anything. We don't have to shift it around. For example, if a woman is tall, we would likewise say "the woman is tall." If there were multiple men, we'd just say "The men are tall." Easy, right? Nothing too complicated about it.

In Spanish, on the other hand, there is a lot of nuance to the use of adjectives. In a lot of ways, it mimics the system utilized for articles in that it mirrors the gender and plurality of the noun in question. This isn't always the case, but a lot of the time it is. There are some special adjectives that don't change, but they're few and far between.

So, with that said, let's go back to that sentence from earlier: *La fresa es roja*.

The original adjective used in this sentence is actually *rojo*, or red. The nifty thing about Spanish adjectives is that their ending changes according to the noun being referred to. Because *fresa* is feminine, *rojo* changed to be feminine as well - through the *o* being changed to an *a*!

Can you take a wild guess at the mechanism through which adjectives are made plural? It's not a super difficult system. If you guessed adding an *s* to it, then you're right. If you wanted to say "the strawberries are red," you would say:

*Las fresas son rojas*.

You see? Nothing terribly difficult about it. Understanding how all of these sentence components work together actually builds to a much bigger lesson. Through this, you're now able to construct sentences that will get points across as well as describe things and people. This will carry you quite a long way as a tourist or just generally as somebody who is trying to start speaking Spanish.

However, this background knowledge also serves another important purpose: having this knowledge will allow you to more easily and intuitively discover different things about the language by reading it and hearing it spoken. This is only going to increase in simplicity as you become more comfortable with the language in general and learn more vocabulary. Your brain's natural intuition for picking up vocabulary through context clues will kick in and you'll start to really have a knack for the language.

Let's look back at our sentences "The man is tall," "the woman is tall," and "the men are tall." The word for tall is *alto* and the word for men and women are *hombre* and *mujer*, respectively. From this, can you guess how these sentences would be written? Give it a try.

If you guessed the following:

- *El hombre es alto*.
- *La mujer es alta*.

- *Los hombres son altos.*

Then you're absolutely correct.

The last thing that we need to discuss in this chapter is the concept of negation. Negation is very important to one's experience in speaking any language. After all, you have to be able to say you don't want something or just generally say that something isn't true. So what do you do when you need to negate something in Spanish?

Well, fortunately, negation in Spanish is very easy. There aren't really any catches or anything that makes it difficult at all, really. Negation in Spanish is an incredibly easy affair consisting primarily of just taking the word *no* and sticking it before the verb.

For example, if we wanted to take the sentence Jorge is tall (*Jorge es alto*) and turn it to the opposite (Jorge is not tall), we would do so by throwing a negatory *no* in front of the verb, like so:

*Jorge no es alto.*

Simple. It's relatively intuitive, but it's still something that we need to cover before we even think about moving on to the next parts of the book. It's an essential skill that you really need to have if you're going to be trying to speak Spanish as a traveler!

## Chapter 2 - Preposiciones (Prepositions)

Prepositions in Spanish are the following: *a, ante, bajo, con, contra, de, desde, en, entre, hacia, hasta, para, por, según, sin, sobre and tras* .

### **A ( to )**

Preposition **a** can loosely translate as **to** , but it actually has many uses that differ from the English preposition. Examples:

I am going home - *Voy **a** casa*

You should go to the supermarket - *Deberías ir **al** supermercado*

We arrived at 3 pm - *Llegamos **a** las 3 de la tarde.*

How much are the tomatoes? - *¿ **A** qué precio están los tomates?*

We are around the corner - *Estamos **a** la vuelta de la esquina*

The magazine is published twice a month - *La revista se publica dos veces **al** mes*

You have to turn left - *Debes girar **a** la izquierda*

Will you call your sister? - *¿Llamarás **a** tu hermana?*

I gave the book to Pedro - *Le di el libro **a** Pedro*

I go to work by foot - *Voy **al** trabajo **a** pie*

Are you going to go? - *¿Vas **a** ir?*

### **Ante**

This preposition can translate as **before** or **in front of** .

Examples:

The truth was in front of me - *La verdad estaba **ante** mí*

Before anything, we must resolve this - ***Ante** nada, debemos resolver esto*

## **Bajo**

**Bajo** means **under** , as in the following examples:

I'm under your orders - *Estoy **bajo** tus órdenes*

The cat is hiding under the blanket - *El gato está oculto **bajo** la manta*

## **Con**

This preposition means **with** :

I love running with my trainers- *Amo correr **con** mis zapatillas*

Do it with love - *Hazlo **con** amor*

I hate eating out with my grandfather - *Odio salir a comer **con** mi abuelo*

## **Contra**

This preposition means **against** :

I'm running against my cousin in the local elections - *Estoy compitiendo **contra** mi primo en las elecciones locales*

My team is playing against yours - *Mi equipo está jugando **contra** el tuyo*

The car crashed against the tree - *El auto chocó **contra** el árbol*

## **De**

**De** means **from** and **as** , but also has many other uses:

I am from Honduras - *Soy **de** Honduras*

The car belongs to my brother - *El auto es **de** mi hermano*

They want us to leave the pub - *Quieren que salgamos **del** pub*

The sculpture is made of marble - *La escultura es **de** mármol*

I am dressed as a pirate - *Estoy disfrazado **de** pirata*

The store is open from 10 a.m. to 3 p.m. - *La tienda abre **de** las 10 de la mañana a las 3 de la tarde*

A standing ovation - *Una ovación **de** pie*

### **Desde**

**Desde** also means **since** or **from** , and sometimes can be used in the same places as **de**:

I do this since I'm 5 years old - *Hago esto **desde** los cinco años*

Everything looks better from where you're standing - *Todo se ve mejor **desde** donde estás parado*

### **En**

**En** means **in** , **at** , **on**, **during** or **into** . Examples:

I'm never at home - *Nunca estoy **en** casa*

She's travelling on a boat - *Está viajando **en** barco*

I'd rather do it during the spring - *Preferiría hacerlo **en** primavera*

I want someone like that in my life - *Quiero a alguien así **en** mi vida*

It's on the table - *Está **en** la mesa*

In the countryside, things are simpler - ***En** el campo, las cosas son más sencillas*

### **Entre**

**Entre** normally means **between**, as in the following examples:

The show starts between 2 and 3 in the morning - *El espectáculo empieza **entre** las 2 y las 3 de la mañana*

I'm in between jobs - *Estoy **entre** empleos*

I'm lost in the crowd - *Estoy perdido **entre** la multitud*

### **Hacia**

**Hacia** normally can translate as **to** or **around** :

I was going straight to her house - *Estaba yendo derecho **hacia** su casa*

He came around 2 p.m. - *Vino **hacia** las 2 de la tarde*

### **Hasta**

**Hasta** can translate as **up to** , **to** or **until** :

I want to swim to the opposite shore - *Quiero nadar **hasta** la otra orilla*

Let's run until we get tired - *Nademos **hasta** que nos cansemos*

### **Para**

Depending on the context, **para** can mean **for** or **to**:

I'm going **to** your house - *Voy **para** tu casa*

I bought a gift for you - *Compré un regalo **para** ti*

### **Por**

**Por** can mean through, **near**, **around**, **in** , by, **per**, **for** and **because of**, depending on the context:

I'm doing it for you - *Lo estoy haciendo **por** ti*

I'm always slow in the morning - *Siempre soy lenta **por** la mañana*

I bought it for three dollars - *Lo compré **por** 3 dólares*

Near my house, there are a lot of shops - ***Por** mi casa hay muchas tiendas*

We have to pay 100 pesos each - *Debemos pagar 100 pesos **por** persona*

I visit my parents once a month - *Visito a mis padres una vez **por** mes*

### **Según**

**Según** can be translated as **according to** :

We will do it according to the rules - *Lo haremos **según** las reglas*

According to Roberto, everything is fine - ***Según** lo que dijo Roberto, está todo bien*

### **Sin**

**Sin** means the lack of something and sometimes can translate as **without** :

He didn't say a word in the whole day - *Estuvo todo el día **sin** decir una palabra*

I don't feel like going out - *Estoy **sin** ganas de salir*

Without job opportunities, it's difficult to take risks - ***Sin** oportunidades laborales, es difícil tomar riesgos*

### **Sobre**

**Sobre** means **on, above, on top of** or **about**, as in the following examples:

Clouds are dancing above us - *Las nubes bailan **sobre** nosotros*

I left the money on the table - *Dejé el dinero **sobre** la mesa*

We were talking about your future - *Estábamos hablando **sobre** tu futuro*

### **Tras**

**Tras** means **after** or **behind** :

After falling asleep for the third time, he was fired - ***Tras** quedarse dormido por tercera vez, fue despedido*

The father was spying on them behind the door - *El padre los espiaba **tras** la puerta*

### **Exercises**

All of this time, I was under his charms - *Todo este tiempo, estaba ..... sus encantos*



I didn't go alone, I went with Inés - *No fui sola, fui ..... Inés*

Is that a painting by Botero? - *¿Ese cuadro es ....Botero?*

The burglar hid under the bed - *El ladrón se ocultó ..... la cama*

I don't want to do anything during the day - *No quiero hacer nada ..... el día*

When you come to town, don't forget to visit my family - *Cuando vengas .... la ciudad, no olvides visitar .... mi familia*

I thought Jeremías was Colombian, but in reality he's from Venezuela - *Pensé que Jeremías era colombiano, pero ..... realidad es ..... Venezuela*

He stood before the judge and lied - *Se paró ..... el juez y mintió*

I'm here since 8 a.m. - *Estoy aquí ..... las 8 de la mañana*

What is all of this chocolate for? - *¿..... qué es todo este chocolate?*

Why are you making yelling? - *¿..... qué gritas?*

You must take your medicine twice a week - *Debes tomar tu medicación dos veces .... la semana*

During all this time I was suspecting the wrong person - *..... todo este tiempo sospeché ..... la persona equivocada*

He left me speechless - *Me dejó ..... palabras*

Try to think with the brain, not with the heart - *Intenta pensar ..... el cerebro, no ..... el corazón*

After thinking a lot about this, I decided to quit - *..... pensarlo mucho, decidí renunciar*

I gave all the credit to my team - *Di todo el crédito .... mi equipo*

I will trade my apple for your orange - *Te cambio mi manzana ..... tu naranja*

I don't leave my house a lot during the winter - *No salgo mucho ..... mi casa ..... el invierno*

I have to choose between my two best friends - *Debo elegir ..... mis dos mejores amigos*

Where is your life going? - *¿..... dónde va tu vida?*

## Chapter 3 - Prepositions and Directions

Once you have a firm grasp of the basics of verbs, adjectives, numbers and colors in Spanish, you can think about adding more to your store of knowledge with a few prepositions – in, on, under, on top of, and other ‘positional’ words – and directions. It’s surprising how often you find yourself either asking for or giving directions – unless you’re a man, of course, in which case you never, ever ask for directions! For everyone else though, directions are useful to know and, along with prepositions, they can significantly increase your potential for both speaking and writing in Spanish.

One major difference between English and Spanish prepositions is that one Spanish word can cover a number of different meanings and contexts. The only way to get a grip on this is to use the prepositions in the way the Spanish use them. It’s a question of research and practice. Don’t be intimidated, because you’ll soon get the hang of using prepositions the way the Spanish use them.

Some prepositions need more explanation than others, because they have a wider variety of uses. Two of them – ‘de’ and ‘a’ – merit closer attention before moving on to the rest.

## Using the preposition ‘de’

Prepositions can be difficult in Spanish until you get used to them, because often, they have more than one meaning. An obvious example is ‘*de*,’ which can mean of, made of, from, or about. It’s also customarily used to denote possession and origins, and it’s used in superlatives. Perhaps the easiest way to demonstrate how ‘de’ is used is to offer some examples.

*Spanish*    *English*

*El coche rojo es de Maria*    The red car is Maria’s (of Maria)

*La buffanda es de algodón*    The scarf is cotton (made of cotton)

*Soy de Italia*    I am from Italy

*Ella es la mas hermosa de todas*    She is the most beautiful of them all

*Leo un libro de cocina*    I am reading a cookery book (book about cookery)

*Bebo un vaso de sangria*    I am drinking a glass of sangria

For ease of understanding, the literal translations are included in brackets, after the broad meanings of the sentences. Practice using ‘de’ in written sentences to familiarize yourself with this important and versatile Spanish preposition.

## Using the preposition ‘a’

Another versatile and widely used preposition is ‘*a*’. It’s English equivalent is to or at, but like ‘*de*,’ it can be used in various ways, not all of which are immediately obvious. However, as you become more proficient at Spanish, you will soon learn how and when to use ‘*a*’ in its customary contexts.

The main uses of ‘*a*’ are to denote time, movement, location, the shape things are done and price, so it can mean towards and for, depending on the context. It can also be used to mean on, by, from, with, into, or in, among other things. Again, it’s simpler and quicker to show how ‘*a*’ is used, so here are some examples, with English translations.

*Spanish* -*English*

*Vengo a las once* - I'll come at 11 o'clock

*Vamos al Mercado* - We're going to the market

*La puerta a la cocina esta abierta* - The door to the kitchen is open (you could also use 'de' here)

*Voy a bailar con mi marido* - I am going to dance with my husband

*Lavamos el coche a mano* - We'll wash the car by hand

In the sentence '*Vamos al Mercado*,' *al* is used as a contraction of '*a el*,' which would be complicated to say. You should always use '*al*' with masculine objects. So you would say '*Vamos al cine*,' or 'Let's go to the cinema,' but '*Vamos a la playa*'. (*La playa* is feminine, so there is no contraction.

There is another special use of '*a*,' which you will notice in the above examples. It's also used together with the verb '*ir*' and the infinitive when you want to express a future intention. Although the infinitive form *bailar* means 'to dance,' it's customary to use '*a*' as a bridge between the verbs. Literally, the sentence reads 'I am going to to dance with my husband.' It's one of a number of quirks of the Spanish language that doesn't have an English equivalent.

## **The Personal A**

Speaking of things with no English equivalent, no discussion on Spanish prepositions is complete without reference to the use of the Personal A . In English, there is no difference in the sentence structure whether the verb refers to a person or a thing, but in Spanish, anything referring to a specific person or domestic pet – whom many people think of as persons in their own right – is preceded by the Personal A .

Confused? There's really no need to be! Let's assume you number a hairdresser among your friends and acquaintances. It's accurate to say:

*Conozco a una peluquera* – I know a hairdresser

However, if you're in need of a quick wash and blow dry, but don't have a particular hairdresser in mind for the job – maybe your hairdresser friend isn't very good – then you would say:

*Necesito una peluquera* – I need a hairdresser

Your hairdresser acquaintance is a specific person, so she gets a Personal A , but the required hairdresser could be anybody, so there's no need to use it.

When it comes to animals, use the Personal A for dogs and cats and other domestic pets, but not for animals in general. So, assuming you are walking with your dog in the fields, and you spot some cows, this is how you'd describe it:

*Puedo ver a mi perro, Pedro* – I can see my dog, Pedro

*Puedo ver tres vacas* – I can see three cows

*Pedro* gets a Personal A because he's part of the family, but the cows are not domestic animals, so they don't warrant it.

It's a good idea to spend some time working with the Personal A , so that its uses are clear in your mind. Getting it right shows that you are serious about learning Spanish, and like many Spanish grammar rules, it's fairly straightforward once you get used to it. And you will certainly impress your Spanish friends if you can drop in a Personal A when it's appropriate.

Just a point of interest to note here. You may have noticed the use of 'es' rather than 'está' in the sentences 'El regalo es para mi' and '*Es una película sobre la Guerra*'. That's because these are permanent states – the gift will always be mine, and the film will always be about the war. However, the cat will not always be outside the store, and the wine will not always be in the fridge.

## **When to use 'para' and 'por'**

Before we move on from prepositions to directions, something else warrants more explanation. You will see that there are two words for 'for' – '*para*' and '*por*'. They each have their particular uses, and if you're serious about learning Spanish, you need to know the difference.

'*Por*' can also mean by, along, through, and about, so it is used to describe transport and movement methods, among other things. For example, if you wanted to say 'I am going to Barcelona by train,' you would say, '*Voy a*

*Barcelona por tren* . If you're on the market, you may see a sign on the *lechugas* (lettuces) '*Cuatro por €1* ' (4 for €1).

'*Para* ' is more commonly used for various scenarios. If something is intended for a particular person, it will be *para* , rather than *por* . When you order in a restaurant, you will say, '*Paella para mi*' (Paella for me) – or whatever you're having. And in the example above, '*El regalo es para mi* .' (The gift is for me). If there is a specific person or purpose, it's *para* , but if it's not so clear, it's *por* .

Now you have a list of Spanish prepositions, along with examples of how to use them, and explanations of common uses. Prepositions are very important in several aspects of Spanish conversation, and one area where prepositions can be used is in directions, whether you are asking for directions – if you're a woman! – or giving them.

## **Asking and offering directions in Spanish**

The thing about Spanish villages and towns is that there seem to be any number of roads in and out of the place. And not all businesses have a shiny new sign above the premises. And of course, if you're on holiday, it's all new to you anyway. So there's bound to come a time when you need to ask directions. Alternatively, someone may stop you in the street to ask directions of you, if you look as if you belong there. Here's how to deal with it.

One word you really need for directions is '***donde*** ?' (where?) That's the magic key to unlock your directions, whether you're a couple of streets away from your destination, or several kilometres. *Donde* is always paired with ***está*** , since although you're asking about the fixed whereabouts of a theatre, museum, railway station or whatever, you're talking geographical locations, so the verb you want is *Estar* , rather than *Ser* . So you might well say '*¿Donde está el museo ?*' (Where is the museum?)

Directions will involve going straight on ( *siga recto or todo recto* ), turning right or left (*Gire a la derecha/ a la izquierda* ), and negotiating roundabouts. 'Turn right at the second roundabout' would be '*Gire a la derecha en la segunda rotunda* .' Native speakers may dispense with the '*gire* .' .

If the directions involve using a main highway (*autovia*) it's handy to know the word for exit, which is '*salida*'. Spanish highway exits don't follow a regular pattern of numbering, so just because you just passed Salida 730, you can't assume the next Salida will be 731. For this reason, exits are usually described by town, village or suburb. It's also worth remembering that just about every highway has directions for the capital, Madrid, so don't automatically assume you have gone wrong when you see Madrid marked up on the next Salida and you're travelling in the opposite direction!

Other useful direction words are *norte* (north), *sur* (south), *este* (east), and *oeste* (west). People won't necessarily use them when giving you directions, but if you're driving into a large town or city, you'll find there are several exits, and knowing the compass points will help you find the most appropriate one.

With just these few words, combined with prepositions and augmented by your vocabulary, you should be able to ask – and give – directions, and, more importantly, understand what is said to you.

## Exercises

(formal) - Excuse me, can you tell me where Tour Eiffel is? • *¿Discúlpeme, podría decirme donde está la Torre Eiffel?* • dis-kul-pe-me po-dree-a de-thir-me don-de es-ta la to-rre ei-fel • dis'kulpeme po'ðria ðe' e'irme 'ðonde es'ta la 'tore i'fel

(informal) - Excuse me, can you tell me where Tour Eiffel is? • *Perdón, ¿podrías decirme donde está la Torre Eiffel?* • per-don po-dree-as de-thir-me don-de es-ta la to-rre ei-fel • per'ðon po'ðrias ðe' e'irme 'ðonde es'ta la 'tore i'fel

Where is the museum? • *¿Donde está el museo?* • don-de es-ta el mu-seo • 'donde es'ta el mu'seo

How can I get there? • *¿Cómo puedo llegar ahí?* • ko-mo pwe-do ie-gar as-ta aee • 'komo 'pweðo je' γ ar a'i

How far is it? • *¿Qué tan lejos es?* • ke tan le-hos es • ke tan 'lexos es



How long does it take on foot ? • *¿Cuánto demoras a pie?* • kwan-to de-mo-ras a pie • ‘kwanto ðe’ moras a pie

It takes about fifteen minutes • *Lleva unos quince minutos .* • ie-ba un-os kin-the mi-nu-tos a pie • ‘jeβa ‘unos ‘kin θ e mi’ nutos a pje

What’s the address? • *¿Cuál es la dirección?* • kwal es la di-rek-thion • kwal es la ðirek’ θ jon

(formal) - Turn left / right • *Gire a la izquierda / derecha* • hi-re a la ith-kier-da / de-re-cha • ‘xire a la i θ ’kjerða / ðe’ret ∫ a

(informal) - Turn left / right • *Gira a la izquierda / derecha* • hi-ra a la ith-kier-da / de-re-cha • ‘xira a la i θ ’kjerða / ðe’ret ∫ a

(formal) - Turn at the corner • *Gire en la esquina* • hi-re en la es-ki-na • ‘xire en la es’kina

(informal) - Turn at the corner • *Gira en la esquina* • hi-ra en la es-ki-na • ‘xira en la es’kina

Far • *Lejos* • le-hos • ‘lexos

Near • *Cerca* • ther-ka • ‘ θ erka

In front of • *Enfrente* • en-fren-te • en’frente

Behind • *Atrás* • a-tras • a’tras

Straight on • *Derecho* • de-re-cho • de’ret ∫ o

By train • *En tren* • en tren • en tren

By car • *En auto* • en au-to • en ‘awto

By bus • *En bus* • en bus • en bus

On foot • *A pie* • a pie • a pje

Where are the toilets? • *¿Dónde están los baños?* • don-de es-tan los ba-nios • ‘donde es’tan los ‘βa ∫ os

Are there any public toilets nearby please ? • *¿Hay algún baño público cerca, por favor?* • ai al-gun ba-nio pu-bli-ko ther-ka por fa-bor • ai al’ γ un ‘βa ∫ o ‘puβliko ‘ θ erka por fa’βor

Where is ...? • ¿*Dónde es...* ? • don-de es • 'donde es

## Chapter 4 - Personal Pronouns

Let's look at some Spanish Personal Pronouns a little more closely ...

1) The word *nosotros* – meaning we – is used either by an entirely male group, or by a group containing at least one male.

If the group contains ONLY females, *nosotras* would be used.

So, in Spanish, there are two ways of saying we:

*nosotros* .... we (masculine or mixed group)

*nosotras* .... we (purely female group)

2) The same rules apply to the Spanish equivalent of they:

*ellos* .... they (when referring to a masculine or mixed group)

*ellas* . ... they (when referring to a purely female group)

3) Now let's take a look at the various ways of saying you ...

Firstly, Castilian Spanish has formal and familiar forms of the word you.

\**Usted* is the formal (singular) form, and would be used for addressing strangers/older people/bosses etc, in order to show respect.

\**Tú* is the familiar (singular) form, and would be used when talking to family/friends/work companions, etc.

These two ways of saying you also have a plural form.

\*If addressing more than one person to whom you should show respect, you would use *ustedes* (ie the plural of *usted*):

*ustedes* . ... you (formal, plural, masculine or feminine)

\*If the people you're addressing are family/friends/acquaintances, you'd use the plural form of *tú*.

The plural form of *tú* has both masculine and feminine versions:

*vosotros* .... you (familiar, plural, masculine or mixed group)

*vosotras* .... you (familiar, plural, purely female group)

To recap on you:

\*one friend/family member – *tú*

\*one stranger/older person – *usted*

\*more than one friend/family member – *vosotros/vosotras*

\*more than one stranger/older person – *ustedes*

In the written form, *usted* can be abbreviated to *Ud* or *Vd* .

Similarly, *ustedes* can be abbreviated to *Uds* or *Vds* .

### **Exercises**

To be (*ser* )

they are - *ellos/ellas son*

you are - *ustedes son / vosotros sois*

To be (*estar* )

they are - *ellos/ellas están*

you are - *ustedes están / vosotros estáis*

To have (*tener* )

they have - *ellos/ellas tienen*

you have - *ustedes tienen / vosotros tenéis*

To live (*vivir* )

they live - *ellos/ellas viven*

you live - *ustedes viven / vosotros vivís*

# Chapter 5 - Verbs

## Regular -AR Verbs

As with English, Spanish verbs are either regular or irregular.

There are three types of regular verbs in Spanish: those ending in **-AR** , those ending in **-ER** , and those ending in **-IR** .

Examples of the infinitives of verbs in these three categories are:

*hablar* .... to speak

*comer* .... to eat

*vivir* .... to live

Let's concentrate on the first group – regular verbs ending in **-AR** such as *hablar* – and learn how to conjugate it in the Present Indicative Tense.

If you were to conjugate the verb to speak in the Present Tense in English, it would be like this:

to speak (infinitive)

I speak

you (singular) speak

he/she/it speaks

we speak

you (plural) speak

they speak

You've already learnt about Spanish Personal Pronouns and how to use them. Now, you just need to know the verb endings.

The Present Tense of hablar - and all regular verbs ending in **-AR** - would be as follows:

Singular

*yo habl o* .... I speak

*tú habl as* .... you (familiar) speak

*él/ella/Vd habl a* .... he/she/you (formal) speak/s

Plural

*nosotros/as habl amos* .... we speak

*vosotros/as habl áis* .... you (familiar) speak

*ellos/ellas/Vds habl an* .... they/you (formal) speak

You conjugate regular -AR verbs by taking the infinitive (ie to speak) which, in this case is

*hablar*

and removing the **-AR** ending in order to get the root, which would be:

habl (= hablar – ar)

To this root, you then add the following endings:

**-o**

**-as**

**-a**

**-amos**

**-áis**

**-an**

This results in the full conjugation of the Present Tense, as you saw above. Although we've used hablar as our example, the same rule would apply to any regular verbs which end in -AR.

## Regular -ER Verbs

Let's now look at regular verbs ending in -ER , taking comer (to eat) as the example, and learn how to conjugate that in the Present Tense.

First of all, we'll take the infinitive (to eat) – *comer* – and find the root of the verb by knocking off the -ER ending:

com (= comer – er)

To this root, add the endings for the Present Tense of regular -ER verbs, as follows:

**-o**

**-es**

**-e**

**-emos**

**-éis**

**-en**

Consequently, the Present Indicative Tense of the verb comer would be:

Singular

*yo com o* .... I eat

*tú com es* .... you (familiar) eat

*él/ella/Vd com e* .... he/she/you (formal) eat/s

Plural

*nosotros/as com emos* .... we eat

*vosotros/as com éis* .... you (familiar) eat

*ellos/ellas/Vds com en* .... they/you (formal) eat

These same endings do not just apply to *comer* but to all regular *-ER* verbs.

## Regular *-IR* Verbs

You know how to conjugate regular *-AR* and *-ER* verbs in the Present Indicative Tense. Now let's look at the last group – verbs ending in *-IR* . We'll take *vivir* (to live) as our example.

Once again, find the root of the verb by removing its ending which, in this case, will leave you with:

*viv*

Then, depending on the person you wish to speak to, add the endings:

***-o***

***-es***

***-e***

***-imos***

***-ís***

***-en***

In other words, the full Present Tense of the verb *vivir* would be:

Singular

*yo viv o* .... I live

*tú viv es* .... you (familiar) live

*él/ella/Vd viv e* .... he/she/you (formal) live/s

Plural

*nosotros/as viv imos* .... we live

*vosotros/as viv ís* .... you (familiar) live

*ellos/ellas/Vds viv en* .... they/you (formal) live

Again, the above rules apply to any regular verb ending in *-IR*.



You now know how to decline all regular verbs in the Present Indicative Tense!

## Using Spanish Verbs

1) Because verb endings vary so much more in Spanish than they do in English, it's not always necessary to use the Personal Pronoun.

For example, you could say:

*hablas español ....* you speak Spanish

*como mucha fruta ....* I eat a lot of fruit

*vivimos en España ....* we live in Spain

None of the above sentences need Personal Pronouns because it's obvious from the ending of the verb who the subject is.

2) It is, however, sometimes necessary to include the Personal Pronoun in order to clarify who it is we're talking about, as in the case of *vive*. If left on its own, it could mean he/she lives or you live. Therefore, you'd include the Personal Pronoun:

*él vive*

*ella vive*

*Vd vive*

However, very often in conversation, it's obvious who the subject is and, if this is the case, the Personal Pronoun is not included.

3) Sometimes, Personal Pronouns are included purely to add emphasis:

*Yo como carne y tú comes pescado*

I eat meat and you eat fish

4) When using two verbs in a row, the first is conjugated, and the second comes in the infinitive:

*deseo comer paella ....* I wish to eat paella

5) In Spanish, if you wish to imply negation, you simply place the word *no* before the verb:

*el niño no come* .... the boy doesn't eat

*no hablo español* .... I don't speak Spanish

6) If you wish to use the interrogative form and ask a question, you must remember to place a reversed question mark at the beginning of the sentence. If using the verb alone, without the Personal Pronoun, this is all you have to do to form a question in the Present Tense. For example:

*¿Hablas español?....* Do you speak Spanish?

When including the Personal Pronoun, you just reverse the normal position of the verb and the pronoun. For example:

*¿Habla Vd español?....* Do you speak Spanish?

As opposed to *Vd habla español* , which would mean you speak Spanish.

### **Common Regular -AR Verbs**

As you now know how to decline the Present Tense of regular -AR verbs, here's a list of 25 for you to practise with them!

\**alquilar* – to rent

\**ayudar* – to help

\**bailar* – to dance

\**buscar* – to look for

\**comprar* – to buy

\**contestar* – to answer

\**dejar* – to allow, to leave

\**entrar (in )* – to enter (into)

\**enviar* – to send

\**esperar* – to hope, to wait for

\**ganar* – to earn, to win  
\**gastar* – to spend  
\**llegar* – to arrive  
\**llevar* – to wear, to carry  
\**mirar* – to look at, to watch  
\**necesitar* – to need  
\**olvidar* – to forget  
\**pagar* – to pay, to pay for  
\**preguntar* – to ask  
\**preparar* – to prepare  
\**regresar* – to return  
\**tomar* – to take, to drink  
\**trabajar* – to work  
\**viajar* – to travel  
\**visitar* – to visit

### **Common Regular -ER Verbs**

And, here's a list of 25 regular -ER verbs with which to experiment!

\**aprender* – to learn  
\**beber* – to drink  
\**ceder* – to give in  
\**comer* – to eat  
\**cometer* – to commit  
\**comprender* – to understand  
\**correr* – to run

\**creer* – to believe  
\**deber* – to have to, to owe  
\**depend* (*de* ) – to depend (on)  
\**esconder* – to hide  
\**exceder* – to exceed  
\**leer* – to read  
\**meter* (*en* ) – to put (into)  
\**ofender* – to offend  
\**poseer* – to possess  
\**proceder* – to procede, to come from  
\**prometer* – to promise  
\**proveer* – to provide  
\**responder* – to reply  
\**romper* – to break  
\**sorprender* – to surprise  
\**temer* – to fear  
\**vender* – to sell

### **Common Regular -IR Verbs**

To finish off with, here you have 25 regular -IR verbs.

\**abrir* – to open  
\**admitir* – to admit  
\**asistir* (*a* ) – to attend (to)  
\**confundir* – to confuse  
\**cubrir* – to cover

\**decidir* – to decide  
\**describir* – to describe  
\**descubrir* – to discover  
\**discutir* – to argue, to discuss  
\**dividir* – to divide  
\**escribir* – to write  
\**evadir* – to evade  
\**existir* – to exist  
\**fundir* – to melt  
\**hundir* – to sink  
\**imprimir* – to print  
\**ocurrir* – to happen  
\**omitir* – to omit  
\**partir* – to leave, to divide  
\**permitir* – to allow, to permit  
\**recibir* – to receive  
\**subir* – to go up, to come up  
\**unir* – to unite  
\**vivir* – to live

In the following exercises, you have to complete either the conjugated verb or the corresponding pronoun:

I am Ana's best friend - ... *soy la mejor amiga de Ana*

You are a great boss - Usted ... *un gran jefe*

He is a very smart boy - Él ... *un muchacho muy inteligente*

We are the best - ..... *los mejores*

You guys are always fighting - *Ustedes ..... siempre peleando*

They are the greatest scientists in their generation - ..... *son las mejores científicas de su generación*

I'm tired - ..... *cansado*

You are prettier each day - ..... *más lindo cada día*

She's sad - ..... *está triste*

We are in danger - ..... *en peligro*

You are crazy - *Vosotros ..... locos*

They are coming - ..... *están viniendo*

I'm cold - ..... *frío*

Do you have a lighter? - ¿..... *un encendedor?*

He's afraid - ..... *miedo*

We have what it takes - *Nosotros ..... lo necesario*

I'm OK, but you always have a problem - *Yo estoy bien, pero ..... tienen siempre algún problema*

They have a secret - *Ellas ..... un secreto*

I live alone - ..... *solo*

We live two blocks away - ..... *a dos cuadras*

You say she's lying? - ¿..... *que ella está mintiendo?*

They say it's too late - *Ellos ..... que es demasiado tarde*

I'm going to ask you to leave - ..... *a pedirte que te marches*

Let's go dancing! - ¡..... *a bailar!*

I do what I can - ..... *lo que puedo*

You do the right thing - ..... *hace lo correcto*

We do everything! - ¡*Nosotros ..... todo!*

I love you - *Te* .....

We love Peruvian food - ..... *la comida peruana*

I can't go - *No* ..... *ir*

He sees what's going on - *Él* ..... *lo que sucede*

I give you everything I have - *Yo te* ..... *todo lo que tengo*

We give our lives for art - ..... *nuestras vidas por el arte*

I want to eat something spicy - ..... *comer algo picante*

Do you want to dance with me? - ¿..... *bailar conmigo?*

They want to travel - *Ellas* ..... *viajar*

# Chapter 6 - The Use of Numbers, Colors, Time and Feelings

## Counting in Spanish

Let's begin this chapter with the use of numbers. The number system in Spanish is based on a ten base (other languages, such as French, use numbers on a sixty base). This makes the numerical structure of Spanish rather similar to English. The first twenty digits are unique. After twenty, all numbers follow the same pattern until reaching one-hundred. After one-hundred, the same pattern repeats over and over until reaching one-thousand.

Let's have a look at the first ten numbers, including zero.

Spanish	English
0 = <i>cero</i>	Zero
1 = <i>uno</i>	One
2 = <i>dos</i>	Two
3 = <i>tres</i>	Three
4 = <i>cuatro</i>	Four
5 = <i>cinco</i>	Five
6 = <i>seis</i>	Six
7 = <i>siete</i>	Seven
8 = <i>ocho</i>	Eight
9 = <i>nueve</i>	Nine
10 = <i>diez</i>	Ten

Table 1. Numbers from 0 to 10 in Spanish

The first ten digits, plus zero, don't bear much resemblance to each other, though they are structured in the same manner. So, it is a matter of learning each digit accordingly. Arabic numbers are also used. Consequently, there is no problem in expressing numbers in the same manner.



Numbers eleven to twenty in Spanish words are presented in Table 2.

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
11 = <i>once</i>	Eleven
12 = <i>doce</i>	Twelve
13 = <i>trece</i>	Thirteen
14 = <i>catorce</i>	Fourteen
15 = <i>quince</i>	Fifteen
16 = <i>dieciseis</i>	Sixteen
17 = <i>diecisiete</i>	Seventeen
18 = <i>dieciocho</i>	Eighteen
19 = <i>diecinueve</i>	Nineteen
20 = <i>veinte</i>	Twenty

Table 2. Numbers from 11 to 20 in Spanish

In this list, you can see how each number is spelled out to reflect its combination of digits. In the case of *dieciseis*, *diecisiete*, *dieciocho*, and *diecinueve*, you may find that these are spelled as “*diez y seis*” (ten and six), “*diez y siete*” (ten and seven), “*diez y ocho*” (ten and eight), and “*diez y nueve*” (ten and nine). These are accepted spellings, though they are not usually taught that way. The reason for this is based on a simplified system where remembering the correct spelling of these numbers is a lot easier that way. Nevertheless, you can spell these numbers both ways, which should not make a difference.

One important pronunciation note is that “*quince*” (15) is pronounced as /keen-seh/ and not /kwInz/. So please keep this in mind whenever you are referring to this number.

Next, the numbers for twenty to thirty still have their own particular spelling. Let’s have a look.

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
21 = <i>veintiuno</i>	Twenty-one
22 = <i>veintidós</i>	Twenty-two

23 = <i>veintitrés</i>	Twenty-three
24 = <i>veinticuatro</i>	Twenty-four
25 = <i>veinticinco</i>	Twenty-five
26 = <i>veintiseis</i>	Twenty-six
27 = <i>veintisiete</i>	Twenty-seven
28 = <i>veintiocho</i>	Twenty-eight
29 = <i>veintinueve</i>	Twenty-nine
30 = <i>treinta</i>	Thirty

Table 3. Numbers from 21 to 30 in Spanish

With this lot of numbers, you will find that they have a specific spelling. Nevertheless, it is accepted to spell them as “veinte y uno,” “veinte y dos,” and so on. Ultimately, it is up to you to find the form that is much easier for you. Also, note that “*veintidós*” and “*veintitrés*” carry a tilde for you to recognize the stress on the word’s last syllable.

The remaining numbers from 30 onward can be spelled as “treinta y uno” and so on. This makes it rather easy to spell out the remaining numbers up to one-hundred. Here is a list of the remaining numbers in order of tens.

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
40 = <i>cuarenta</i>	Forty
50 = <i>cinquenta</i>	Fifty
60 = <i>sesenta</i>	Sixty
70 = <i>setenta</i>	Seventy
80 = <i>ochenta</i>	Eighty
90 = <i>noventa</i>	Ninety
100 = <i>cien</i>	One hundred
200 = <i>doscientos</i>	Two hundred
300 = <i>trescientos</i>	Three hundred
1000 = <i>mil</i>	One thousand

Table 4. Numbers from 40 to 1000 in Spanish

In this chart, you will notice how each ten is based on a single digit. So, “*cuatro*” becomes “*cuarenta*” and so on. Also, one hundred is spelled out as “*cien*”. However, when combined with the remaining digits, the numbers would work out a “*ciento uno*” (101), “*ciento dos*” (102), and so on. What this means is that you can combine “*ciento*” with any other number. As such, “*ciento treinta y nueve*” (139) can be spelled out just like the earlier ones.

Also, “*mil*” is one thousand and can be combined as follows:

- *Diez mil* (ten thousand)
- *Cien mil* (one-hundred thousand)
- *Un millón* (one million)
- *Diez millones* (ten million)
- *Mil millones* (one billion)

Notice how “billion” is expressed as a “thousand million,” though it is possible to say “*un billon*.” Both forms would be understood, though “thousand million” would be more suitable for a formal business context.

## Describing With Colors

Next, we have colors. One very important note about numbers is that, like all adjectives, colors are subject to the masculine-feminine agreement, as well as singular and plural agreement. This means that you need to make sure that the color agrees with the subject you are talking about.

First, let’s have a list of the most commonly used colors.

Spanish	English
<i>Amarillo</i>	Yellow
<i>Anaranjado</i>	Orange
<i>Azul</i>	Blue
<i>Blanco</i>	White

<i>Gris</i>	Grey
<i>Marron</i>	Brown
<i>Morado</i>	Purple
<i>Negro</i>	Black
<i>Rojo</i>	Red
<i>Rosado</i>	Pink
<i>Verde</i>	Green

*Table 5. Most commonly used colors in Spanish*

By default, colors are masculine. But when they agree with a feminine subject, their spelling changes. For example, “*vestido rosado*” (pink dress) refers to a masculine noun (*vestido*). So, “*rosado*” is spelled with an “o” ending. In the case of a feminine noun, “*camisa rosada*” (pink shirt), “*camisa*” is considered feminine. As such, “*rosada*” now has an “a” ending in order to signal that it is feminine and not masculine.

The situation changes somewhat when you factor in singular and plural. So, “*vestidos rosados*” (pink dresses) agrees both in terms of gender and number. The “s” ending indicates that it is plural. In the case of “*camisas rosadas*,” the same situation applies.

Notice also that both the adjective and noun must be singular or plural in order to maintain the proper agreement.

There are a couple of exceptions, though. *Azul*, *gris*, *verde*, and *marrón* do not change in terms of gender but do agree in terms of number. So, “*botas grises*” (grey boots), where “*botas*” is feminine plural, would be the same as “*coches grises*” (grey cars), where “*coches*” is masculine plural.

Please keep this in mind, as there are exceptions from time to time. Bear in mind that virtually all adjectives in Spanish have a singular and plural form, even if they are considered uncountable in English. For instance, “*un pan*” (a bread) may refer to individual units of bread in Spanish, where “bread” is uncountable in English.

Also, in Spanish, adjectives come after nouns. So, “*cielo azul*” (blue sky) is the opposite of the proper English syntax. Please keep this in mind so that you can avoid confusing your interlocutors when speaking.

## Telling the Time

The next topic covered in this chapter is time.

Time is a rather straightforward topic in Spanish. However, there are a couple of differences.

For starters, time is generally based on a 24-hour clock rather than two, 12-hour clocks. So, the morning hours are expressed from “*cero horas*” (zero hours, or midnight) to “*doce horas*” (twelve hours, or midday). After midday, time is expressed as “*trece horas*” (thirteen hours), all the way up to “*veinticuatro horas*” or midnight. Once the new day begins, time is then reset to “zero hours.” This distinction is made in order to avoid confusion between am and pm times.

For instance, if you have an appointment at 7 o’clock in the evening, you could express it as “*diecinueve horas en punto*” (nineteen hours “on point”). The expression, “on point” is used to indicate that it is the beginning of the hour or “o’clock” in English.

It is also possible to express time on a 12-hour basis. However, it is important to include the specific time of day you are referring to. So, “ten o’clock in the morning” would be “*diez de la mañana*.” Afternoon hours would be referred to as “*de la tarde*.” For instance, “*cinco de la tarde*” (17:00 or 5 pm) is referring to a time that is past midday.

Now, here is an interesting difference between English and Spanish. Spanish does not account for “evening.” As a matter of fact, as soon as the sun goes down and it gets dark, the time then becomes “*noche*” or night. So, “*seis de la tarde*” would be “six in the afternoon” since the sun doesn’t typically finish setting by this time. However, “*siete de la noche*” (seven at night) would be logical since it is normal for it to be dark around this time. So, the rule of thumb is that as soon as it is completely dark, you can begin to use “night.”

This also applies to greetings, like “goodnight” or “*buenas noches*”, which is the applicable greeting whenever it is completely dark. However, if there is still a twinge of sunlight, then it would still be proper to use “*buenas tardes*” (good afternoon).

Fractional portions of hours also have their own particular expressions.

- “ *cuarto* ” refers to “quarter.” So, “ *es un cuarto después de las dos* ” (it’s a quarter past two) refers to 2:15. “ *Un cuarto para las dos* ”, (a quarter to two) refers to 1:45. Please notice the difference in the use of “ *después* ” (after) and “ *para* ” (to) when referring to time.
- Also, the use of “ *media* ” (half) makes it clear that you are talking about half hours. So, “ *son las tres y media* ” (It is three and a half) is the same as saying “half past,” or 30 minutes past the hour.
- Other fractional hours can be expressed using the exact number of minutes. So, “ *es la una y veinticinco* ” (it’s one twenty-five) refers to 1:25.
- Please notice that hours are always expressed in the plural form, except for one. Hours are feminine, but minutes are masculine. Nevertheless, your expression of time will always make reference to the feminine form and not the masculine form.

When in doubt, you can always refer to time by expressing the numbers themselves. For example, you can say, “ *son las cuatro y cinco* ” (it’s four and five), that is, 4:05. You will not be questioned if you are referring to am or pm when giving the current time, but you might be asked to clarify if you are referring to a future time. So, be sure to use “ *de la mañana* ,” “ *de la tarde* ,” or “ *de la noche* ” in order to clarify the time of day you are referring to.

Now, let us move on to the days of the week.

- *lunes* (Monday)
- *martes* (Tuesday)
- *miércoles* (Wednesday)
- *jueves* (Thursday)
- *viernes* (Friday)
- *sábado* (Saturday)
- *domingo* (Sunday)

Please note that the days of the week are not capitalized in Spanish. In fact, they are written in lowercase letters. For example, “ *hoy es lunes* ” (Today is

Monday) illustrates how the days of the week are not capitalized.

Also, here are the months of the year.

- *enero* (January)
- *febrero* (February)
- *marzo* (March)
- *abril* (April)
- *mayo* (May)
- *junio* (June)
- *julio* (July)
- *agosto* (August)
- *septiembre* (September)
- *octubre* (October)
- *noviembre* (November)
- *diciembre* (December)

Just like the days of the week, months are not written with capitals. So, a formal date such as “*lunes, tres de septiembre*” (Monday, September third) would not be expressed in capitals. Also, please note that dates are written out in nominal number and not in ordinal numbers like in the case of English.

With regard to years, there is no split between the digits of a year. For example, the year “2010” would be “*dos mil diez*,” that is, “two thousand ten.” So, keep this in mind any time you are talking about a year.

Here are some examples:

- 1991 (*mil novecientos noventa y uno* – one thousand nine hundred and ninety-one)
- 2002 (*dos mil dos* – two thousand two)
- 1885 (*mil ochocientos ochenta y cinco* – one thousand eight hundred and eighty-five)

Keep this important difference in mind when talking about years.

## Expressing Feelings

The last item in this chapter refers to feelings.

Generally speaking, feelings are adjectives, which agree in gender and number. This implies that you need to be aware if you are talking about yourself or others in the singular and/or plural form.

As such, a question such as “¿Cómo estás?” (how are you?) can be replied with:

- *Estoy bien* . (I am fine)
- *Estoy cansado/a* (I am tired)
- *Estoy feliz* (I am happy)

Notice how “*feliz*” does not have a gender agreement but would have a plural agreement as “*feliz*” (singular) and “*felices*” (happy in plural form).

Here is a list of the most common feelings in the Spanish language.

Spanish	English
<i>Feliz</i>	Happy
<i>Enamorado/a</i>	In love
<i>Aburrido/a</i>	Bored
<i>Cansado/a</i>	Tired
<i>Asustado/a</i>	Scared
<i>Enojado/a</i>	Angry
<i>Celoso/a</i>	Jealous
<i>Sorprendido/a</i>	Surprised
<i>Contento/a</i>	Happy, satisfied
<i>Nervioso/a</i>	Nervous
<i>Ocupado/a</i>	Busy
<i>Preocupado/a</i>	Worried



<i>Furioso/a</i>	Furious
<i>Triste</i>	Sad
<i>Avergonzado/a</i>	Embarrassed
<i>Optimista</i>	Optimistic
<i>Relajado/a</i>	Relaxed
<i>Fatal</i>	Terrible, awful

*Table 6. Most commonly used colors in Spanish*

Notice how most of the adjectives are presented as “o/a ” in order to indicate their masculine or feminine form. There are a couple of exceptions, such as “*feliz* ,” “*triste* ,” and “*optimista* ,” which do not have a specific gender form. So, please make sure to use them without changing their ending. Nevertheless, they do have a singular and plural form. So, make sure to keep this in mind.

# Chapter 7 - Nature, Animals and Geography

## Plants

¿Te gusta la jardinería ? (Do you like gardening?)

¿Te gusta la naturaleza ? (Do you like nature?)

In case you have to buy flowers for someone, or you are going for a nature walk, let's learn some vocabulary to be able to talk about plants.

Spanish	English
<i>Flor</i>	Flower
<i>Flores</i>	Flowers
<i>Árbol</i>	Tree
<i>Árboles</i>	Trees
<i>Un ramo de flores</i>	A bouquet of flowers
<i>Rosas</i>	Roses
<i>Margaritas</i>	Daisies
<i>Amapolas</i>	Poppies
<i>Plantas</i>	Plants
<i>Hierba</i>	Grass
<i>Césped</i>	Lawn
<i>Planta de interior</i>	Indoor plant
<i>Planta de exterior</i>	Outdoor plant
<i>Árbol de Navidad</i>	Christma's tree

Let's put now these words in sentences:

*¿Cuál es tú flor favorita? (What is your favourite flower?)*

*Mi flor favorita es la rosa (My favourite flower is roses)*

*Quisiera un ramo de flores, por favor (I would like a bouquet of flowers, please)*

*El jardín de la escuela está lleno de flores amarillas y anaranjas (School's garden is plenty of yellow and orange flowers)*

*El campo está lleno de margaritas y amapolas (Countryside is plenty of daisies and poppies)*

*Margarita es también un nombre de mujer en español (Margarita is also a women's name in Spanish)*

*En la Toscana hay muchas amapolas (There are a lot of poppies in Tuscany)*

*No tengo ninguna planta en casa (I do not have any plant at home)*

*Mi gato muerde las plantas (My cat bites the plants)*

*Tengo que cortar la hierba del jardín (I need to cut the garden's grass)*

*Han cambiado el césped del campo de futbol (They have changed football field grass)*

*Wimbledon se juega en pista de hierba (Wimbledon is played on lawn's court)*

*Mi árbol de Navidad es de plástico reciclado (My Christmas's tree is made from recycled plastic)*

*¿Puedes recomendarme una planta de interior? (Can you advise me any indoor plant?)*

*Es una planta de interior muy bonita, gracias (It's an indoor plant very beautiful, thanks)*

*Es una planta de exterior así que la pondré en el jardín (It's an outdoor plant so I'm going to put it in the garden)*

*¿Me ayudas a decorar el árbol de Navidad? (Can you help me to decorate the Christmas's tree?)*

**Animals (farm, sea, pets etc)**

¿Te gustan los animales? (Do you like animals?)

¿Cuál es tú animal favorito? (What is your favourite animal?)

¿Tienes mascota? (Do you have pets?)

Vamos a aprender vocabulario sobre animales . (Let's learn some vocabulary about animals!)

*Animales de granja* (Farm animals)

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>vaca</i>	Cow
<i>caballo</i>	horse
<i>cerdo</i>	Pig
<i>gallo</i>	Rooster
<i>gallina</i>	Hen
<i>oveja</i>	Sheep
<i>cabra</i>	Goat
<i>conejo</i>	Rabbit
<i>burro</i>	Donkey
<i>pato</i>	Duck

**Some sentences:**

*La vaca es grande* (The cow is big)

*El caballo es blanco* (The horse is white)

*El cerdo está gordo* (The pig is fat)

*El gallo y la gallina están durmiendo* (The rooster and the hen are both sleeping)

*La oveja está comiendo* (The sheep is eating)

*La cabra salta la roca* (The goat jumps over the rock)

*El conejo está escondido* (The rabbit is hidden)

*El burro está enfadado* (The donkey is angry)

*El pato está nadando* (The duck is swimming)

*¿Qué es una mascota?* (What is a pet?)

*¿Crees que todos los animales pueden ser mascotas ?* (Do you think all animals can be pets?)

*Vamos a ver una lista de las mascotas más típicas* (Let's take a look on this list of most typical pets):

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>perro</i>	dog
<i>gato</i>	cat
<i>tortuga</i>	turtle
<i>Pez</i>	fish
<i>conejillo de Indias</i>	guinea pig
<i>lagarto</i>	lizard
<i>serpiente</i>	snake
<i>hamster</i>	Hamster
<i>conejo</i>	rabbit

**Let's practice the following sentences about pets:**

*Mi perro se llama Bombón* (My dog's name is Bombon)

*Soy alérgico a los gatos* (I'm allergic to cats)

*De pequeño tenía una tortuga* (When I was a kid, I had a turtle)

*El pez de Alfredo es naranja* (Alfredo's fish is Orange)

*Tengo dos conejillos de indias* (I have two guinea pigs)

*No me gustan los lagartos* (I do not like lizards)

*Me dan miedo las serpientes* (I'm scared of snakes)

*A mi hermana no le gustan los hamsters* (My sister doesn't like hamsters)

*Hemos adoptado un conejo* (We have adopted a rabbit)

*¿Y tú? ¿Tienes mascota?* (And you? Do you have a pet?)

**Now practice these tongue-twisters about animals.**

*“El perro de San Roque no tiene rabo porque Ramon Rodriguez se lo ha robado”* (San Roque's dog hasn't got a tail because Ramon Rodriguez stole it)

*“Tres tristes tigres comen trigo de un trigal”* (Three sad tigers eat wheat from a wheatgrass)

Note: In Spanish a tongue-twister is called “*trabalenguas*”.

*Más animals* (More animals):

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>tigre</i>	tiger
<i>león</i>	lion
<i>elefante</i>	elephant
<i>jirafa</i>	giraffe
<i>rinoceronte</i>	rhino
<i>cocodrilo</i>	crocodile
<i>ballena</i>	whale
<i>delfín</i>	dolphin
<i>tiburón</i>	shark
<i>foca</i>	seal
<i>pulpo</i>	octopus
<i>oso</i>	bear
<i>camello</i>	camel
<i>leopardo</i>	leopard

**Let's make sentences about animals:**

*El tigre tiene rayas (Tiger has stripes)*

*El león vive en la sabana (Lion lives in the savannah)*

*El elefante africano tiene las orejas muy grandes (African elephant has a very large ears)*

*La jirafa corre deprisa (Giraffe runs fast)*

*El rinoceronte tiene dos cuernos (Rhinos have two horns)*

*El cocodrilo es un animal muy peligroso (Crocodiles are very dangerous animals)*

*La ballena azul es el animal más grande de la Tierra (The blue whale is the biggest animal of the Earth)*

*El delfín es un animal muy inteligente (Dolphin is a very intelligent animal)*

*El tiburón más pequeño mide unos veinte centímetros (The smallest shark measures around twenty centimetres)*

*Hay focas en el ártico (There are seals in the Arctic)*

*En España puedes comer pulpo (In Spain you can eat octopus)*

*No hay muchos osos en el Pirineo (There aren't many bears in the Pyrenees)*

*Hay camellos en el desierto (There are camels in the desert)*

*Los leopardos son más pequeños que los tigres (Leopards are smaller than tigers)*

## **Geography and Landscapes**

Now let's learn some useful vocabulary about geography and landscape.

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>lago</i>	lake
<i>latitud</i>	latitude
<i>llano</i>	plain
<i>longitud</i>	longitude
<i>bosque</i>	forest

<i>cabo</i>	cape
<i>campo</i>	countryside
<i>cascada</i>	waterfall
<i>continente</i>	continent
<i>costa</i>	coast
<i>desierto</i>	desert
<i>mapa</i>	map
<i>estanque</i>	pond
<i>golfo</i>	gulf
<i>hemisferio</i>	hemisphere
<i>isla</i>	island
<i>mar</i>	sea
<i>montaña</i>	mountain
<i>océano</i>	ocean
<i>playa</i>	beach
<i>prado</i>	meadow
<i>puerto</i>	port
<i>río</i>	river
<i>tierra</i>	land
<i>universo</i>	universe
<i>valle</i>	valley
<i>volcán</i>	volcano
<i>norte</i>	North
<i>sur</i>	South
<i>este</i>	East
<i>oeste</i>	West
<i>país</i>	country
<i>ciudad</i>	city



pueblo	village
barrio	borough

**Let's see now examples using these words:**

*El agua del lago está muy fría* (Lake's water is very cold)

*La latitud especifica si un sitio está en el norte o en el sur* (Latitude specifies if a place is in the North or the South)

*El paseo es fácil porque es llano* (The walk is easy because is plain)

*La longitud especifica si un sitio está en el este o en el oeste.* (Longitude specifies if a place is in the east or the west)

*Gibraltar está en un cabo* (Gibraltar is situated in a cape)

*Prefiero vivir en el campo que en la ciudad* (I prefer living in the countryside than in the city)

*Las cascadas del Niágara son muy famosas* (Niagara waterfalls are very famous)

*Asia es el continente más grande* (Asia is the biggest continent)

*Este verano viajaremos por la costa* (This summer we'll be traveling along the coast)

*En el desierto hace mucho calor* (It's very hot in the desert)

*¿Has encontrado el mapa?* (Have you found the map?)

*Hay peces en el estanque* (There are fishes in the pond)

*El golfo de México es el golfo más grande del mundo* (Mexico's gulf is the biggest gulf in the world)

*Argentina está en el hemisferio sur* (Argentina is in the south hemisphere)

*Mallorca es una isla* (Majorca is an island)

*El Mar Muerto tiene mucha sal* (The Death Sea has a lot of salt)

*Me gusta ir a la montaña a esquiar* (I like going to the mountain to sky)

*El océano ártico es muy frío* (The Arctic Ocean is very cold)

*Hay mucha gente en la playa cuando hace buen tiempo* (There are a lot of people on the beach when the weather is nice)

*La granja está situada en un prado* (The farm is placed in a meadow)

*Siempre hay muchos barcos en el puerto de Barcelona* (There are always a lot of ships in the Barcelona's port)

*Este río es muy largo* (This is a very long river)

*Hay mucha tierra sin ninguna edificación* (There is a lot of land without any building)

*Es universo es enorme* (The universe is huge)

*El campamento está en un valle* (The camp is in a valley)

*En Islandia hay volcanes* (There are volcanoes in Iceland)

*Canadá está en el hemisferio norte* (Canada is in the north hemisphere)

*Estados Unidos está al sur de Canadá* (USA is at the south of Canada)

*China está al oeste de Canadá* (China is at the west of Canada)

*Inglaterra está al este de Canadá* (England is at the East of Canada)

*Rusia es el país más grande del mundo* (Russia is the largest country in the world)

*Vivo en esta ciudad desde que nací* (I live in this city since I was born)

*Vamos a un pueblo que está cerca de la ciudad* (We're going to a village that is near to the city)

*Mi barrio es seguro para vivir* (My borough is safe for living)

## **Towns (main towns and capitals around the globe)**

*¿Dónde vives?* (Where do you live?)

Would you know how to say your city in Spanish? For example, London is *Londres* in Spanish.

Many sites keep their name unchanged in English and Spanish (or other languages), however there are also a lot in which, names will be translated (generally slightly).

*Vamos a ver como se llaman algunas ciudades en español.* (Let's see how to tell some cities in Spanish!)

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>Atenas</i>	Athens
<i>Bucarest</i>	Bucharest
<i>El Cairo</i>	Cairo
<i>Ciudad del Cabo</i>	Cape Town
<i>Copenhague</i>	Copenhagen
<i>Florenia</i>	Florence
<i>Ginebra</i>	Geneve
<i>La Habana</i>	Havana
<i>Estambul</i>	Istambul
<i>Lisboa</i>	Lisbon
<i>Londres</i>	London
<i>Luxemburgo</i>	Luxembourg
<i>La Meca</i>	Mecca
<i>Moscu</i>	Moscow
<i>Nueva Delhi</i>	New Delhi
<i>Nueva Orleans</i>	New Orleans
<i>Nueva York</i>	New York
<i>Filadelfia</i>	Philadelphia
<i>Praga</i>	Prague
<i>Estocolmo</i>	Stockholm
<i>Tokio</i>	Tokyo
<i>Túnez</i>	Tunisia
<i>Varsovia</i>	Warsaw

**Note:** Although names keep unchanged (or largely similar), pronunciation can be very different.

**Let's see some examples:**

*Atenas fue la capital de la antigua Grecia* (Athens was the capital of the Ancient Greece)

*Nuestra estancia en Bucarest fue encantadora* (Our stay in Bucharest was lovely)

*No dejes de visitar el museo egipcio cuando vayas a El Cairo* (Be sure to visit the Egyptian museum when you go to Cairo)

*Hacer submarinismo en Ciudad del Cabo fue una experiencia inolvidable* (Diving in Cape Town was an unforgettable experience)

*Tenías razón, Copenhague es una ciudad muy limpia* (You were right, Copenhagen is a very clean city)

*Toda la ciudad de Florencia es como un museo* (The whole city of Florence is like a museum)

*En Ginebra se encuentran las mejores fábricas de relojes* (In Geneva can be found the best watches' factories)

*La música es parte esencial del alma de La Habana* (Music is an essential part of Havana's soul)

*Estambul conecta Oriente con Occidente* (Istanbul connects East with West)

*Las cafeterías en Lisboa son un lugar perfecto para relajarse* (Lisbon's cafés are the perfect place to relax)

*Londres es la ciudad europea que recibe más turistas* (London is the European city that receives more tourists)

*Luxemburgo es uno de los estados más pequeños del mundo* (Luxembourg is one of the smallest states in the world)

*Me dijo que tenía que visitar La Meca al menos una vez en la vida* (He told me that I had to visit Mecca at least once in my life)

*Moscú es una de las ciudades más caras del mundo* (Moscow is one of the most expensive cities in the world)

*Si no has estado en Nueva Delhi, no conoces la India* (If you haven't been in New Delhi, you don't know India)

*Si te gusta la música en vivo, no dejes de visitar los clubes de Nueva Orleans* (If you like live music, be sure to visit New Orleans' clubs)

*Por muchas razones, Nueva York es una ciudad muy cinematográfica* (Due to several reasons, New York is a very cinematographic city)

*Tom Hanks ganó el óscar protagonizando "Filadelfia"* (Tom Hanks won the Oscar starring in "Philadelphia")

*La invasión de turistas en pequeñas ciudades como Praga se está convirtiendo en un gran problema* (Tourists invasion in small cities like Prague is becoming a big issue)

*Algunas personas consideran Estocolmo como la ciudad más bonita de Europa* (Some people consider Stockholm as the most beautiful city in Europe)

*La ciudad con más habitantes del planeta es Tokio* (The city with more habitants in the planet is Tokyo)

*Muchas escenas de 'La guerra de las galaxias' fueron rodadas en Túnez* (Many scenes from 'Star Wars' were filmed in Tunisia)

*Por su ubicación estratégica, Varsovia ha sufrido mucho en todos los conflictos europeos del siglo XX* (Because of its strategic location, Warsaw has suffered a lot during all the European conflicts on the 20th century)

**Now is your turn. Try to say the following cities in Spanish:**

Cairo (*El Cairo* )

Florence (*Florenxia* )

Copenhagen (*Copenhagen* )

Tunis (*Túnez* )

Geneve (*Ginebra* )

New York (*Nueva York* )

Istambul (*Estambul* )

Moscow (*Moscú*)

# Chapter 8 - Education

School vs. Online Education.

Educación.

*Escuelas vs Educación en línea:*

## **PART 1.**

*¿La educación es importante? Creo que todo el mundo diría Sí, pero ¿se piensa lo mismo de las escuelas? ¿La escuela es importante? En el pasado, el mejor lugar para aprender era en la escuela, pero ahora Internet ha cambiado todo. Existen cursos en línea para todo. Tú puedes estudiar casi cualquier tema o materia que desees. Incluso puedes conseguir que un profesor te enseñe por Skype.*

English:

Is education important? I think everyone would say Yes. But what about school? Is school important? In the past, the best place to learn was in school. But now the internet has changed everything. There are now online courses for everything. You can study almost any topic and subject you want to. You can even get a teacher to teach you on Skype.

## **Vocabulary:**

*Educación:* Education.

- Example: *La educación es importante porque ayuda a las personas a tener una buena vida.* ( Education is important because it helps people live a good life).

*Aprender :* To learn.

- Example: *Tú puedes aprender mucho de la lectura .* (You can learn a lot from reading.)

*Curso :* A course.

- Example: *Yo hice un curso de ciencia en línea* . (I did an online science course.)

*Estudiar* : To study.

- Example: *Yo estudio ciencias en la escuela* . (I study science at school.)

*Tema/Materia* : A topic/subject.

- Example: *Ciencias es mi materia favorita* . (Science is my favourite subject.)

*Profesor* : A teacher.

- Example: *A mí me agrada mi profesor de ciencias* . (I like my science teacher.)

*Enseñar* : To teach.

- Example: *Voy a enseñarle a mi amiga a conducir porque ella aún no sabe* . (I will teach my friend how to drive because she doesn't know how.)

## **PART 2.**

*Incluso puedes hacer grados universitarios en línea. Puedes realizar el plan de estudios completo sin necesidad de entrar en un aula. La única diferencia es que no hay periodos o semestres. Así que puedes estudiar tan rápido o tan lento como desees. Sin embargo, tal vez tendrás que hacer el examen en la universidad.*

English:

You can even do university degrees online. You can do the full curriculum without even going into a classroom. The only difference is that there are no terms or semesters. So you can study as quickly or slowly as you want. You may have to take the exam at the university though.

### **Vocabulary:**

*Universidad* : University.



- Example: *Yo estudié ciencias en la universidad* . (I studied science at university.)

*Grado universitario* : (A university) degree.

- Example: *Yo obtuve un grado universitario en ciencias. Ahora voy a hacer mi maestría* . (I got a degree in science. Now, I'm going to do a Masters degree.)

*Plan de estudios* : A (school) curriculum.

- Example: *El plan de estudios es algo difícil porque hay muchas materias* . (The curriculum is quite difficult because there are many subjects.)

*Aula* : A classroom.

- Example: *El profesor se para en frente del aula* . (The teacher stands at the front of the classroom.)

*Periodo (académico)*: A term.

- Example: *Hay 3 periodos en el año* . (There are 3 terms in a year.)

*Semestre* : A semester.

- Example: *Las universidades generalmente tienen 2 semestres, en otoño y en primavera* . (Universities usually have two semesters, autumn and spring.)

*Examen* : An exam.

- Example: *Al final del curso hice un examen* . (At the end of the course I took an exam.)

## Chapter 9 - How to Write in Spanish

Writing and speaking are very similar to each other in that they require a lot more active participation from the learner. You have to create your own speech, generate your own grammatical awareness, and focus on little things like word order and spelling.

Reading and listening are important skills to have and they provide necessary input (something we've discussed previously). Writing and speaking, however, take that input you've received and turn it into your own personal output, therefore helping to solidify the concepts and vocabulary in your mind.

Writing in Spanish is a wonderful tool and will help improve various other skills you've been working on. When you write, you have to read what you're writing (practice your reading). You can read it out loud (practice your speaking) and focus on your pronunciation and how the words sounds (practice your listening).

This chapter is going to focus on writing, discussing the benefits, as well as some tips, to ensure that you're getting the most out of this integral skill.

## **Benefits of Writing in Spanish**

Writing can be tedious and it's not always the most enjoyable of activities, especially when thinking about writing in Spanish. It is, however, a very important skill to have. We use writing every day, way more often than we may even realize. All those text messages and emails you send are written. Those reminders you put in your phone or scribble onto post-it notes? These little, casual ways of writing are precisely where you can start when looking for chances to practice this skill in Spanish.

If you can't find a Spanish conversation partner, you should try to find a pen pal. Maybe someone in one of your Spanish classes you can send text messages to or email back and forth with. You can write out your to-do lists or leave yourself reminders in Spanish.

Writing in Spanish is beneficial, not only because it's something that draws on the other areas of the language that you will want to work on, but also because it is a daily part of life. If you plan on using your Spanish for work, you'll need to write emails. If you're learning Spanish for pleasure, you'll surely find yourself wanting to meet and communicate with native speakers, via Facebook, email, WhatsApp, etc.

Let's take a look at ways that you can practice and perfect your writing ability.

## **Write to Other People**

As you may have discovered when we were talking about speaking, having a network of Spanish-speakers (or Spanish language learners) around you is extremely beneficial. Well, this is also true when talking about writing.

## **Write to Yourself**

What's that word we keep using when talking about learning Spanish? A habit? Well, surprise, surprise, here it comes again! Creating a habit of writing in Spanish on a regular basis can be the key to success when mastering this specific skill. A writing habit can be created by writing little things in Spanish every day. This doesn't mean it has to be full sentences. Maybe it's a to-do list. Maybe it's a quick reminder to yourself to pay the gas bill. Whatever it is, writing in Spanish is a great way to commit vocabulary to memory and to ensure that you're using what you've learned on a regular basis.

## **Keep a Journal**

This doesn't mean you have to write a daily "Dear Diary" entry. What we're talking about here is just a small notebook and daily habit of writing down a handful of things. Start by writing the day of the week, the month, etc. to practice with that basic vocabulary. Then, write out three little bullet points. What did you do that day? What good thing happened (everyone can benefit from some positive reflection at the end of every day)? You don't need to document your entire life, just simply make it a point to write something down in Spanish every day.

## **Write Yourself Daily Reminders**

Do you live in a sea of post-it notes? Why not make that a sea of Spanish? Similarly, do you find yourself typing out a lot of reminders in your phone? Type them out in Spanish. Everyone needs a little help keeping track of all of the things that we need to do every day. If you start keeping track of those things in Spanish, you already have a built-in habit in the making.

## **Put Your Phone, Calendar, Facebook in Spanish**

On the surface, this tip is something that will help with your reading. But if you take the extra step to continue with the Spanish vibe, you will be able to carry this very useful tool over to help with your writing skills. When you're penciling in your dinner with friends on your calendar write it down in Spanish. Setting your alarm for the morning? Type in a quick note to yourself in Spanish reminding you of anything important that you're doing that day.

## **Write Your Lists in Spanish**

This is a wonderful way to really put all that vocabulary you've been studying into practice. Writing out your to-do lists in Spanish will help you review daily chores and household items vocabulary. Food vocabulary is something that you will want to be familiar with, especially if you plan on traveling in a Spanish-speaking country (being able to read a menu may save you some interesting experiences you'd rather not have). Write out your shopping list in Spanish.

## **Read, Then Write**

We've talked a little about taking notes when reading. At that point, we talked about how it will help to check your reading comprehension. What we didn't say was how much it will help with other areas of your language learning, as well.

When you read something in Spanish, you may not realize it, but you are being exposed to a whole slew of useful, beneficial, and necessary input--word order, masculine/feminine, verb conjugations, object pronouns, etc. Being familiar with all of these things will not only make reading easier and speaking more natural, but they will surely help your writing as well.

After you read a passage, find a sentence or phrase that really "speaks to you". This doesn't mean it has to move you on an emotional level. Maybe it's something that contains one of those tricky verb conjugations you've been working with or perfectly puts that one vocabulary word into a context you feel you would actually use it in in the future. Then, take the time to write out this chunk of text. The best way to do this, honestly, is the good ol' fashioned pen and paper method. This is simply because it has been proven that the muscle memory that comes with writing helps the brain absorb and retain the information better than simply typing it up on a computer or into a "page" on our phone.

Don't just stop with writing out that one sentence or phrase, however. Chances are they caught your attention for a reason. Take what is said in that text and rewrite it again in your own words or write out a summary of what was happening around that section so you can remember it better later.

This doesn't have to just be limited to passages from a book. You could find a song that you really like or a scene from a movie that really drew you in.

Copying or writing things out is a good idea because it pulls on several different skills at the same time (reading OR listening OR both, then writing). Here are some ideas for things you may find yourself wanting to write down:

- Song lyrics
- Passages from a favorite book/poem
- Inspirational quotes
- Recipes
- Information about things that interest you--fun facts or statistics, sports terminology or medical terms

## **Write, Then Speak**

If you want to proofread what you've written, short of sending it off to someone else to check, the best way to find any mistakes is through reading what you've written out loud. After you've finished writing out your to-do list, your daily journal, or your interpretations/reactions to your favorite song, take a moment to read them out loud to yourself. This is your chance to check for grammar, spelling, or vocabulary mistakes.

When reading over your writing, you should ask yourself the following questions:

- Are my sentences too short or choppy? One thing you will notice, quickly, is that in Spanish, sentences tend to be longer than we would normally have in English. Compare your sentence length/style to that of the ones in your authentic texts you've been reading.
- Have I incorporated nuances or liaisons in the correct way, in the correct place?

- Have I paid attention to the cardinal rule: AGREE, AGREE, AGREE (subject/verb, gender, number)?
- Is my word order correct (i.e. noun THEN adjective)?
- Do my ideas flow together? (Am I using the correct linking words?--see the section below.)

## Learn “Real” Spanish

Reading the Quijote is one thing. Typing a text to your friend is another. You will notice as you go through your journey into the Spanish language that, like in English, there is a formal and an informal way of speaking or writing. Becoming familiar with both styles of Spanish is the difference between saying, “I’m spending time with my friends” or “I’m hanging out with my friends” in English. You will be understood no matter which of the options you say but you can imagine the trouble one might come across if they aren’t familiar with the more colloquial expression “hang out” especially when speaking to natives.

Let’s take a moment to look at some of the things you probably won’t find in textbooks but should form a part of your Spanish language writing (and speaking!).

## Idioms

Idioms are fun, usually comical, expressions that you can throw into your writing to add a little bit of a light-hearted, humorous feel to what you’re saying. What makes these little expressions difficult is that they don’t always translate directly to English. Here are some examples of very commonly used, non-translatable Spanish idioms.

Spanish Idiom	Meaning in English	Direct Translation
<i>Estar como una cabra</i>	To be crazy/to be acting out of the ordinary	To be like a goat
<i>Echar agua al mar</i>	“Preaching to the choir”	Throw water to the sea
<i>No tener pelos en la</i>	To not have a filter/to	To not have hairs on

<i>lengua</i>	Speak your mind	your tongue.
<i>Tomarle el pelo</i>	To pull someone's leg	To pull his/her/your/etc. hair.
<i>Pillarle el toro</i>	To run out of time	To be caught by the bull
<i>Eramos pocos y parió la abuela</i>	When it rains it pours	We were few, and grandma had a baby



# Chapter 10 - Asking Everyday Questions

## Asking Questions

Here is a list of important question words. You have already learned some of them as you go along, so those should be a review. Study the pronunciations and meanings below then read some common questions you can make with them.

*Qué* /kay/- what

*Quién* /kee-in/- who

*Cuándo* /cwan-do/- when

*Cuánto* /cwan-to/- how much/how many

*Cómo* /co-mo/- how

*Dónde* /don-day/- where

*Por qué* /por-kay/- why

*¿Qué te gusta hacer?*

*Me gusta mirar la televisión y andar en bicicleta.*

*¿Cuánto cuestan las fresas?*

*Las fresas cuestan diez dólares.*

*¿Quién es?*

*Es mi amiga, Sara.*

*¿Cómo estás?*

*Estoy mal.*

*¿Cuándo es la reunión?*

*La reunión es a las cuatro.*

*¿Dónde estás?*

*Estoy en el parque.*

*¿Por qué tienes un libro?*

*Porque necesito estudiar.*

Because “*porque*” is both because and why, you can answer questions that use “*porque*” with “*porque*.”

If you are asking a “yes” or “no” question, you just say the sentence as you would a declaration. The only thing that changes is your inflection. There is no “is” or “does” to be put at the front to make it into a question. Look at the sentence and question examples below.

*Marta es mi amiga* . -I am declaring that she is my friend, telling people what I already know.

*¿Marta es mi amiga?* -At the end of this sentence, your voice should go up slightly to indicate that it is a question.

*Es mi amiga Marta* . -The subject can be a bit fluid in Spanish, and this is another perfectly fine way to state the fact.

*¿Es mi amiga Marta?*- Because you can state the fact like this, you can also ask the question like this.

*No tienes hermanos* .- I am stating a fact. You don’t have siblings.

*¿No tienes hermanos?*- Now, I am asking.

In English, we use similar inflection when asking questions, so recognizing the spoken question should not be too difficult. Recognizing a written question is also made easy by the question mark at both the beginning and the end of a question.

**Activity 1** . Read the following situations and write a question for each one. Suggested questions are given below. You can also write example answers.

1. You want to know if your friend has your favorite food.
2. You want to know where your dad is.
3. You want to know when your Spanish class is.
4. You want to know how much something costs.
5. You want to know who the girl is.

Answers:

1. ¿Tienes carne?

*Si, tengo carne.*

2. ¿Dónde está mi padre?

*Tu padre está en su trabajo.*

3. ¿Cuándo es mi clase de español?

*Es a las tres y media.*

4. ¿Cuánto cuestan los huevos?

*Cuestan ocho córdobas.*

5. ¿Quién es la niña?

*La niña es mi hermana.*

**Activity 2** . Write answers for the following questions. Suggested answers are written below.

1. ¿Quién eres?

2. ¿Qué te gusta hacer?

3. ¿Dónde estás?

4. ¿Cuándo te despiertas? (you wake up)

5. ¿Cuándo te duermes? (you sleep)

6. ¿Cómo eres? (Remember that when this form of “ser ” is used instead of “estar ,” it isn’t asking how you are but rather for you to describe your characteristics).

Suggested Answers:

1. *Yo soy Madelyn.*

2. *Me gusta ir al parque y me gusta visitar a mis amigos.*

3. *Estoy en mi casa.*

4. *Me despierto a las cuatro y media de la mañana.*

5. *Me duermo a las nueve de la noche.*

6. *Yo soy baja y rubia.*

## **What You Do- Talking about Your Vocation**

### **Career Vocabulary**

Do you use “*ser*” or “*estar*” to talk about profession? *Ser*. Even though your profession can change, it is closer to “permanent” than “temporary” which is why we use the verb that is usually used for more permanent things. Below are some common professions and pronunciations.

*Trabajo* /trah-bah-ho/- work or job

*Abogado* /ah-bo-gah-do/- lawyer

*Constructor* /cun-strook-tor/- construction worker

*Bombero* /boh-m-bear-oh/- fireman

*Camarero* /cahm-ah-rare-oh/- waiter

*Dentista* /den-tees-tuh/- dentist

*Maestro* /mah-ase-tro/- teacher

*Piloto* /pee-lo-to/- pilot

*Peluquero* /peh-loo-care-oh/- hairdresser

*Médico* /med-ee-co/- doctor

*Secretario* /seh-creh-tar-ee-oh/- secretary

*Mecánico* /meh-cahn-ee-co/- mechanic

*Ingeniero* /in-hen-ee-air-oh/- engineer

*Jardinero* /har-dee-nare-oh/- gardener

*Cocinero* /coh-see-nare-oh/- cook

*Enfermero* /en-fare-mare-oh/- nurse

*Traductor* /trah-dook-tor/- translator

*Policía* /po-lee-see-uh/- policeman/woman

Of the above professions, most of them can be changed to the feminine form by substituting the “o ” on the end of “a .” Of course, if it is feminine, you would use “la ” instead of “el ” at the beginning. “*Dentista* ” and “*policia* ” always have an “a ” on the end whether it is a male or female. Look at the two sentences below.

*La policía camina al parque.*

*El dentista trabaja diez horas.*

You can see that the first sentence is talking about a policewoman and the second sentence is talking about a male dentist. The “la ” or “el ” is what shows the gender with those that don’t change the ending.

With “*traductor* ” and “*constructor* ” that end in a consonant, you can make them feminine by adding an “a ” onto the end. See the following two sentences.

*El traductor no viene hoy.*

*La traductora viene a las dos y media.*

The first sentence is about a male translator while the second sentence is about a female translator.

### **Asking and Answering about Jobs**

There are several ways people might ask you about your job. Here are a few of the questions they might ask.

*¿En qué trabajas?*

*¿Cuál es tu trabajo?*

*¿Qué haces?*

The last question is more general and could be used in other circumstances as well. It can be asked when someone wants to know what you are currently doing or what you are doing in the future. *¿Qué haces mañana ?*

Another question little kids might answer is.

*¿Qué quieres ser cuando seas grande?*

Here are some sample answers.

*Quiero ser un bombero.*

*Quiero ser una dentista.*

If someone were to ask you what you do, what would you answer?

*Soy una maestra. Soy un policía.*

### **Conversation Practice**

Let's practice answering a few questions about both your profession and a friend's profession. Use full sentences to answer each question. Below the questions are sample conversations with sample answers that may or may not be similar to the ones you give.

*¿En qué trabaja usted?*

*¿A usted le gusta su trabajo?*

*¿Qué le gusta sobre su trabajo?*

*¿Cuál es la profesión de su amigo?*

*¿A él le gusta su trabajo?*

Sample conversations:

*¿En qué trabaja usted?*

*Yo soy peluquero.*

*¿A usted le gusta su trabajo?*

*Si, me gusta mucho.*

*¿Qué le gusta sobre su trabajo?*

*Me gusta hablar con mis clientes.*

*¿Cuál es la profesión de su amigo?*

*Mi amigo es un doctor.*

*¿A él le gusta su trabajo?*

*Si, le gusta ser un doctor.*

However, for now, another common question when talking about professions include the past perfect tense. You should memorize how to answer this type of question even though you haven't worked through this whole tense yet. That way, you will be prepared to answer it before having completed that verb study.

*¿Cuánto tiempo has trabajado en la escuela?* If you are a teacher, you might be asked this question.

*¿Cuánto tiempo has trabajado en esta profesión?* This question is more general and could be directed to anyone.

*¿Cuánto tiempo has sido un \_\_\_\_\_?* You would fill in the blank with your profession- médico, enfermero, ingeniero.

Your answer will use the same format. You will substitute “he” for “has” to change the question from asking about you to answering about I.

*Yo he trabajado en la escuela por tres años.*

*Yo he trabajado en esta profesión por ocho meses.*

*Yo he sido un doctor por cuatro años.*

You can see how the answers reflect the questions. You can pick one of these ways to answer and memorize the word order and format. That way, even if you aren't quite sure which format you are being asked, you can still answer the question correctly.

## Where Are You Going?

### The Verb “Ir”

The verb “ir” means to go, and it can be used to tell a place you are currently going. “Ir” being such a short verb has to be irregular. If you just took off the ending, you would be left with nothing. Below is a chart with the conjugation of “ir.”

<i>Yo voy</i>	<i>Nosotros vamos</i>
<i>Tú vas</i>	<i>Vosotros vais</i>

Él/ ella/ usted va

Ellos/ ustedes van

While the verb is irregular, it still follows the ending pattern used with other verbs. You can see the “-as” ending with “tú” and so forth. When talking about a place you are going, you can make a sentence simply by picking the appropriate verb above and using “a” as well as the place.

For example,

*Voy a mi casa.*

*Ella va a su casa.*

*Ellos van a su casa.*

If you ever have a sentence like the following- *Yo voy a el parque* - you can combine “a” and “el.” This combination is similar to the way we use conjugations. A + el = al

The correct way to say the above sentence is “*Yo voy **al** parque .*” You wouldn’t leave out “el” altogether and say “I go to park.” That sounds stilted and awkward just as it does in English. Note that if you are going to a feminine place, you will not combine “a” and “la.” This combination only happens with “a” and “el.”

## **Places Vocabulary**

You have come across a few places so far in this book such as “*casa*” and “*parque*,” but you go many more places than that. Study the vocabulary list below and read the words aloud following the pronunciation list.

*Iglesia* /ee-gles-ee-uh/- church

*Biblioteca* /bee-blee-oh-tek-uh/- library

*Dentista* /den-tees-tuh/- dentist

*Tienda* /tee-en-duh/- store

*Restaurante* /res-tow-rah-n-tay/- restaurant.

*Cine* /seen-ay/- movie theater

*Playa* /plai-yuh/- beach



*Estación de bus* /es-tah-see-on deh boos/- bus station

*Mercado* /mare-cah-do/- market

*Farmacia* /far-mah-see-uh/- pharmacy

*Banco* /bahn-co/- bank

*Hospital* /os-pee-tahl/- hospital

*Panadería* /pahn-ah-dare-ee-uh/- bakery

*Librería* /lee-brare-ree-uh/- bookstore

However, right now, you will simply be using the vocabulary to tell where you are going. Most of the above words are clearly either “el” or “la.” However, a couple are a bit harder to guess.

**Activity 1** . Fill in the blanks below with either *el*, *la*, *los* or *las* .

\_\_\_\_\_ *playa*

\_\_\_\_\_ *mercado*

\_\_\_\_\_ *cine*

\_\_\_\_\_ *bancos*

\_\_\_\_\_ *farmacia*

\_\_\_\_\_ *hospitales*

\_\_\_\_\_ *librerías*

\_\_\_\_\_ *tienda*

\_\_\_\_\_ *estación de bus*

Answers-

*La, el, el, los, la, los, las, la, la*

**Activity 2.** Read the following statements and draw a picture that illustrates what is happening. The answers are below.

1. *Las niñas van a la playa.*

2. *Ellos van a la iglesia el domingo.*
3. *Yo voy a la estación de bus cada día.*
4. *Mi padre va a la tienda.*

Answers:

1. The girls go to the beach.
2. They go to the church on Sunday.
3. I go to the bus station every day.
4. My dad goes to the store.

### **Using “Ir” for the Future**

Another way to use “*ir*” is to talk about something you are “going” to do. In English, we might say, “I am going to study.” You can use the same format in Spanish. Read the following example sentences and figure out what each person is going to do.

*Maria: Voy a visitar a mi abuela.*

*Jorge: Voy a comer carne y queso.*

*Pedro: Voy a nadar mañana.*

This is the formula we use when using “*ir*” to talk about the future.  
“Conjugated *Ir* + a +unconjugated action.”

Notice the second verbs in the above sentences. They are not conjugated. We do not say “*Voy a visito .*” That would be equivalent to saying “I am going I visit.”

In fact, in other cases as well, if there are two verbs one after the other, the second verb is not conjugated. For example,

*Necesito hablar.* I need to speak. Once again, we would not say “I need I speak.”

*Quiero comer.*

*Ella quiere venir.*

**Activity 1** . Read about their plans then answer the questions in full sentences. The answers can be found below.

*Gregorio: El lunes, miércoles, y viernes, voy a trabajar. El martes, voy a jugar al tenis. Me gusta mucho jugar al béisbol, pero mi amigo no le gusta. El jueves, voy a limpiar mi casa. Y el sábado y domingo, voy a ir a la playa con mi familia.*

*Violeta: Necesito trabajar mucho esta semana. Trabajo cinco días a la semana- del martes al sábado. El domingo, voy a ir a la iglesia. El lunes, voy a la tienda y voy a comprar mucha comida, como arroz, frijoles, queso, y fruta. También, voy a llamar a mi amiga y hablar con ella. Y voy a caminar en el parque.*

*¿Qué va a hacer Gregorio el jueves?*

*¿Qué va a hacer Violeta el jueves?*

*¿Qué va a hacer Violeta el domingo?*

*¿Qué va a hacer Gregorio el viernes?*

Respuestas (Answers):

*Gregorio va a limpiar su casa.*

*Violeta va a trabajar el jueves.*

*Violeta va a ir a la iglesia el domingo.*

*Gregorio va trabajar el viernes.*

**Activity 2** . Write about one thing you are going to do each day of the upcoming week. Here is an example schedule.

*El lunes, voy a visitar a mi amiga.*

*El martes, voy a trabajar.*

*El miércoles, voy a ayudar a mi abuela.*

*El jueves, voy a comer una pizza grande.*

*El viernes, voy a mirar una película en el cine.*

*El sábado, voy a cocinar mucha comida.*

*El domingo, voy a ir a la iglesia.*

## **Basic Conversations**

Read the conversation aloud. Then, complete the second conversation with your own answers.

*Elena: Hola, Marcos. ¿Cómo estás?*

*Marcos: Estoy bien, gracias. ¿Adonde vas?*

*Elena: Voy a la tienda para comprar comida para cenar. Necesito comprar huevos, fruta, carne, y repollo.*

*Marcos: Ah, ¿vas a hacer una ensalada?*

*Elena: Sí, voy a hacer una ensalada. ¿Quieres venir y comer la cena conmigo?*

*Marcos: No, no puedo. Voy a trabajar.*

*Elena: ¡Qué mal! Bueno, tal vez puedes venir a mi casa otro día.*

*Marcos: Okay, hasta luego.*

*Elena: Hasta luego.*

*Marcos: ¿Que vas a hacer hoy?*

*Tú:*

*Marcos: Yo voy a ir a la casa de mi amiga.*

*Tú:*

*Marcos: Sí, me gusta trabajar.*

*Tú:*

# Chapter 11 - The Imperative and Subjunctive Moods

## Indicative Mood

In general, Spanish speakers use the indicative mood when engaging in regular conversation. An indicative mood is a form used to provide information, state facts, and even express opinions in the past, present, future, and conditionals.

As such, the use of the indicative mood is the most commonly used form to express meaning. Thus far, we have focused on the indicative mood. The tenses that we have discussed are all centered on this mood.

Consider this example:

- *Estoy viendo la televisión* . (I am watching television.)

This example illustrates how you can express a fact. The fact in this example is that you are watching television.

This seems pretty straightforward, right?

Indeed, the indicative mood is the most commonly used mood in a regular conversation. However, things change when you move away from the indicative mood and enter the subjunctive.

## Subjunctive Mood

You probably have not heard of the subjunctive mood, as it is not a common topic in English classes. However, it is widely used in Spanish. In fact, the subjunctive is used about as much as the indicative mood. It is one of the nuances that native Spanish speakers develop more out of custom and habit than out of sheer linguistic proficiency.

You are probably wondering what the subjunctive mood is and how its use translates to the English language.

The subjunctive mood is essentially used to express wishes, obligation, necessity, desires, and doubt. Consequently, we are moving away from expressing facts and opinions to a bit of a gray area in which we are not necessarily talking about things that are clear-cut.

As such, the subjunctive is used any time you move away from “real” situations and into situations that reflect conditions, which are not always true at the moment. Hence, desires, wishes, and doubt fall perfectly into this category.

So, let us delve more into the expression of wishes and desires. In this case, you are referring to situations where you would like something to happen but may not necessarily have the ability to make it happen at the time of speaking or may seem unlikely at some point. You can even express situations that are completely unreal.

For example, you might be thinking about situations where you wish you had millions of dollars or that you could change something that is impossible to change. These circumstances, given the fact that you are not talking about a fact, would fall into the realm of the subjunctive.

Here are some expressions that generally accompany the subjunctive:

- *Desear que* (to wish that)
- *Esperar que* (to hope that)
- *Exigir que* (to demand that)
- *Mandar que* (to order that)
- *Ordenar que* (to order that)
- *Pedir que* (to ask that)
- *Preferir que* (to prefer that)
- *Querer que* (to want that)

Notice that we are talking about expressions that refer to things that you wish, hope, and prefer to happen. Also, you can see how there are actions that you can order or demand to be done. Now, it should be noted that these are not direct orders or requests. When you make a request using the

subjunctive form, you are either requesting that something be done as a result of a condition being met, or you are simply trying to be much more polite about it.

The subjunctive can also be used to talk about emotions or reactions to certain situations. The underlying reason for the use of the subjunctive when expressing reactions and emotions is the use of the expression “*es + adjective + que* .” This expression, when used to express emotions or reactions, is a signal that you are using the subjunctive form.

Here are some examples of this construction:

- *Es absurdo que* (it is absurd that)
- *Es bonito que* (it is nice that)
- *Es Bueno que* (it is good that)
- *Es fundamental que* (it is essential that)
- *Es importante que* (it is important that)
- *Es inútil que* (it is useless that)
- *Es justo que* (it is fair that)
- *Es triste que* (it is sad that)
- *Es urgente que* (it is urgent that)
- *Me encanta que* (I love that)
- *Me gusta que* (I like that)
- *Me molesta que* (it bothers me that)
- *Me sorprende que* (it surprises me that)

Notice how these constructions all represent ideas and feelings, which may not necessarily be true at the time of speaking. While you might be talking about something that is very much present at the time of speaking, you might also be talking about something that hasn't even happened yet.

Consider this example:

- *Es importante llegar a tiempo* . (It is important to get there on time.)

In this example, the subjunctive form in Spanish matches up quite well with the subjunctive form in English. While the use of the subjunctive in English isn't nearly as prevalent as it is in Spanish, the previous example makes a great case for using this form in both languages.

One other case in which the subjunctive is used is when the speaker is expressing doubt or disbelief. The following expressions are characteristic of this case.

- *No creer que* (not to believe that)
- *Dudar que* (doubt that)
- *No opinar que* (not to think that)
- *No pensar que* (not to think that)

You can also use the following conjunctions with the subjunctive mood.

- *A fin de que* (in order to)
- *A menos que* (unless)
- *Antes de que* (before that)
- *Sin que* (without)
- *Con tal de que* (provided that)
- *Ojalá* (hopefully)
- *Quizá* (maybe)
- *Para que* (so that)
- *Tal vez* (perhaps)

Below are words pertaining to time that can also be used:

- *Cuando* (when)
- *En cuanto* (as soon as)



- *Hasta que* (until)
- *Después de que* (after)
- *Tan pronto como* (as soon as)

As you can see, there is a good deal of expressions that signal the use of the subjunctive. As you gain more experience with the subjunctive, you will automatically begin to recognize what expression or part of speech prompts the subjunctive form usage. So, it certainly pays to do your homework.

## **Imperative Mood**

The other mood used in Spanish is the imperative mood. In short, the imperative is used to give direct orders and commands. In English, the imperative allows the speaker to omit the use of the subject as it is implied that the subject of a command is “you.” The same rule applies in Spanish.

Now, you might be wondering what differences there would be between the use of the imperative mood and commands given in the subjunctive. First of all, orders and requests given in the subjunctive can be directed at anyone. In the case of the imperative, the orders and commands given are directed specifically to “you.”

As with the subjunctive, the verb conjugation changes to reflect the difference in mood. Here is a general overview of such changes in conjugation.

With regular AR verbs, you can use the following rule of thumb.

- Verb: *hablar* (to speak)
  - *(tú) habla – no hables* (negative form)
  - *(usted) hable*
  - *(nosotros) hablemos*
  - *(ustedes) hablen*

Notice how the verb conjugation changes in the endings given to the verb. Also, the subject is placed in parentheses as it is not used when actually

saying such phrases, but we have included them to illustrate the subject we are referring to.

The conjugation of the regular *IR* verbs, as well as *ER* verbs, can be viewed as follows:

- Verb: *comer* (to eat)
  - *(tú) come / no comas* (negative form)
  - *(usted) coma*
  - *(nosotros) comamos*
  - *(ustedes) coman*

Once again, you can see how the verb endings reflect a variation in the regular conjugation. As you become familiar with this form, you will notice how straightforward it actually is. The challenge, of course, is to recall the proper endings in this mood.

There are also irregular verbs that can be used in the imperative mood. So, here are the most common commands used:

- *Di* (say)
- *Haz* (do)
- *Pon* (put)
- *Sal* (come out)
- *Sé* (be)
- *Ten* (have)
- *Ve* (go)
- *Ven* (come here)

Consider these examples:

- *Di algo* (say something)
- *Haz un esfuerzo* (do an effort)

- *Pon tu nombre* (put your name)
- *Sal a jugar* (come out to play)
- *Sé honesto* (be honest)
- *Ten paciencia* (have patience)
- *Ve a dormir* (go to sleep)
- *Ven conmigo* (come here with me)

These examples all illustrate commands that you can express using the imperative mood. Also, they use the (*tú* ) form. So, you can easily use them whenever you are asking to your interlocutor to carry out an action at any given point.

Ultimately, the use of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative all boils down to the situation where you find yourself communicating. Consequently, you can use any of these moods to get your message across effectively. So, do take the time to go over the various moods so that you can recognize them.

# Chapter 12 - Preguntando Lugares Turísticos - Asking for Tourist Places

## Spanish

-Clara: *Buenos días mis amores, ya llegue.*

-Noah: *¡Mamá!*

-Agatha: *Mamii.*

-Clara: *¿Ya desayunaron?*

-Agatha: *No, vino servicio a la habitación pero no había nada que me gustara.*

-Clara: *Les tengo una sorpresa entonces... ¡ SÁNDWICHES!*

-Noah: *Yeeey.*

-Agatha: *Gracias mamá.*

-Clara: *Espero que les gusten, me los recomendó una señora de la zona, su nombre es Wanda, me dio su número para que le preguntara cualquier cosa.*

-Agatha: *Pregúntale a que lugares podemos ir a pasear.*

-Clara: *Bien pensado, ya la llamo.*

-Clara: *Hola Wanda es Clara.*

-Wanda: *Hola Clara, me alegra que llames.*

-Clara: *Gracias, quería preguntarte ¿Cuáles son los lugares turísticos que hay en la zona?*

-Wanda: *Bueno, tienes la playa que está a unos 10 minutos de la panadería; la montaña está a unos 15 kilómetros al norte y hay un parque de diversiones que está a 5 kilómetros al oeste.*

-Clara: *Perfecto, hay mucho que visitar entonces.*

-Wanda: *Así es, que lo disfruten.*

## **English**

-Clara: Good morning, my darlings. I'm here.

-Noah: Mom!

-Agatha: Mommy.

-Clara: Have you had breakfast?

-Agatha: No, room service came, but I didn't like anything.

-Clara: I have a surprise for you then... SANDWICHES!

-Noah: Yeeey.

-Agatha: Thanks, mom.

-Clara: I hope you like them. They were recommended to me by a local lady. Her name is Wanda, and she gave me her number so I could ask her anything.

-Agatha: Ask her where we can go for a walk.

-Clara: Good thinking. I'll call her.

-Clara: Hi Wanda, it's Clara.

-Wanda: Hi Clara, I'm glad you called.

-Clara: Thank you. I wanted to ask you, what are the tourist places in the area?

-Wanda: Well, you have the beach that is about 10 minutes from the bakery. The mountain is about 15 kilometers to the north, and there is also an amusement park that is 5 kilometers to the west.

-Clara: Perfect, there's a lot to visit then.

-Wanda: That's right, enjoy it.

## **Visita a la playa- Visit to the beach**

### **Spanish**

*-Clara: Acabo de hablar con Wanda y me dijo que hay una playa a 10 minutos de la panadería donde compré el desayuno.*

*-Agatha: Genial, amo la playa.*

*-Noah: Que bien, ¿Puedo llevar mi snorkel?*

*-Clara: Lo sé Agatha. Claro que puedes Noah.*

*-Agatha: ¿Dónde están los trajes de baño?*

*-Clara: En la maleta grande.*

*-Noah: ¿Y mi snorkel?*

*-Clara: Debe estar ahí también.*

*-Noah: Si, aquí esta.*

*-Clara: Traigan las toallas, sus sandalias, el protector solar, agua, gorras y sus lentes de sol.*

*-Noah: Llevare mi pala para hacer castillos de arena.*

*-Agatha: Y yo mi salvavidas.*

*-Clara: Perfecto. Vamonos, hay que tener cuidado con el oleaje.*

*-Noah y Agatha: Ok.*

## **English**

*-Clara: I just spoke to Wanda, and she told me that there is a beach 10 minutes from the bakery where I bought breakfast.*

*-Agatha: Great, I love the beach.*

*-Noah: Good, can I bring my snorkel?*

*-Clara: I know Agatha. Of course, you can, Noah.*

*-Agatha: Where are the bathing suits?*

*-Clara: In the big suitcase.*

*-Noah: What about my snorkel?*

*-Clara: It must be there too.*

-Noah: Yes, here it is.

-Clara: Bring the towels, your sandals, sunscreen, water, caps, and sunglasses.

-Noah: I'll take my shovel to make sandcastles.

-Agatha: And I will bring my lifeguard.

-Clara: Perfect. Let's go. We have to be careful with the waves.

-Noah and Agatha: Ok.

## **Visita a la montaña- Visit to the mountain**

### **Spanish**

*-Clara: El día de ayer en la playa fue agotador.*

*-Agatha: Fue lo máximo, lo disfrute mucho.*

*-Noah: ¿Vamos a ir hoy a la playa de nuevo?*

*-Clara: No, pensaba ir a la montaña que me dijo Wanda. ¿Qué opinan?*

*-Agatha: No me gusta la montaña.*

*-Noah: Yo nunca he ido a una.*

*-Clara: Por eso vamos a ir Agatha, para que Noah la conozca.*

*-Agatha: Bueno.*

*-Clara: Para ir a la montaña debemos llevar ropa deportiva, gorra, lentes, repelente de mosquitos y mucha agua.*

*-Agatha: Odio los mosquitos.*

*-Clara: Entonces no olvides el repelente.*

*-Agatha: Esta bien.*

*-Noah: ¿Qué se hace en la montaña, mamá?*

*-Clara: Caminar, escalar, ejercitarse y ver la flora y fauna.*

*-Noah: Ya veo.*

*-Clara: Caminar en las montañas también es conocido como treking.*

*-Agatha: Ya había oído sobre eso.*

*-Clara: Pues hoy veras como se hace.*

*-Agatha: Esta bien.*

*-Clara: Lleven zapatos deportivos también, y chaquetas por si llueve.*

*-Noah: Ok.*

*-Agatha: Esta bien.*

*... En la montaña...*

*-Clara: Bueno hijos, aquí estamos, miren todos esos árboles, flores, plantas, vean las aves y los insectos que hay. Algunos dicen que hay monos en ciertos lugares de la montaña*

*-Noah: Genial, yo quiero verlos.*

*-Clara: Abramos los ojos a ver si logramos verlos.*

## **English**

-Clara: Yesterday on the beach was exhausting.

-Agatha: It was the best. I enjoyed it a lot.

-Noah: Are we going to the beach again today?

-Clara: No, I was thinking of going to the mountain that Wanda told me. What do you think?

-Agatha: I don't like the mountain.

-Noah: I've never been to one.

-Clara: That's why we're going to Agatha so that Noah knows it.

-Agatha: Good.

-Clara: To go to the mountain, we must wear sports clothes, a cap, glasses, mosquito repellent, and lots of water.

-Agatha: I hate mosquitoes.



-Clara: Then don't forget the repellent.

-Agatha: Okay.

-Noah: What do you do in the mountains, Mom?

-Clara: Walk, climb, exercise, and see the flora and fauna.

-Noah: I see.

-Clara: Walking in the mountains is also known as trekking.

-Agatha: I've heard about that before.

-Clara: Well, today, you'll see how it's done.

-Agatha: All right.

-Clara: Bring sneakers too, and jackets in case it rains.

-Noah: Ok.

-Agatha: Okay.

... On the mountain...

-Clara: Well children, here we are. Look at all those trees, flowers, and plants. Look at the birds and the insects that are there. Some say there are monkeys in certain parts of the mountain.

-Noah: Great, I want to see them.

-Clara: Let's open our eyes to see if we can see them.

## **Visita al parque de diversiones- Visit to the Amusement Park**

### **Spanish**

-Clara: *Buenos días hijos. Estoy segura que hoy será su día favorito.*

-Noah: *¿Por qué?*

-Clara: *Iremos al parque de diversiones.*

-Agatha: *¡SIIIII!*

-Noah: *¡YUPIIII!*

-Clara: *Vístanse para salir temprano y poder aprovechar el tiempo.*

-Noah: *Genial mamá*

*... En el parque...*

-Clara: *¿Qué les parece?*

-Noah: *Esta increíble mamá.*

-Agatha: *Me encanta, quiero subirme en todo.*

-Clara: *Hay varias montañas rusas, hay una casa de espejos, una casa embrujada, toboganes, piscinas, caballos, nado con delfines, kartings, carros chocones, canchas de tenis, de futbol, de baloncesto, mesas de ping pong, salones de videojuegos, trampolines, buceo, simuladores, pared de escalada, paintball, un carrusel, una rueda de la fortuna y muchas otras cosas.*

-Noah: *Esto es el paraíso mamá.*

-Agatha: *Lo máximo, me quiero quedar a vivir aquí.*

-Clara: *Hay ciertas reglas y prohibiciones para las atracciones.*

-Agatha: *¿Cómo así?*

-Clara: *Para algunas atracciones debes ser mayor de una altura, para otras, mayor de cierta edad.*

-Noah: *Rayos.*

-Clara: *Pero vamos, hay muchas atracciones que probar.*

## **English**

-Clara: *Good morning, children. I'm sure today will be your favorite day.*

-Noah: *Why?*

-Clara: *We'll go to the amusement park.*

-Agatha: *YEEES!*

-Noah: *YUPIIII!*

-Clara: *Get dressed so we can leave early and be on time.*

-Noah: Great mom.

... In the park...

-Clara: What do you think?

-Noah: This incredible, mom.

-Agatha: I love it. I want to get on everything.

-Clara: There are several rollercoasters. There's a mirror house, a haunted house, slides, swimming pools, horses, swimming with dolphins, karts, bumper cars, tennis courts, soccer courts, basketball courts, ping pong tables, video game rooms, trampolines, diving, simulators, climbing walls, paintball, a carousel, a wheel of fortune, and many other things.

-Noah: This is paradise, Mom.

-Agatha: The best. I want to stay and live here.

-Clara: There are certain rules and prohibitions for the attractions.

-Agatha: How so?

-Clara: For some attractions, you have to be higher than a certain height. For others, you have to be older than a certain age.

-Noah: Damn.

-Clara: But come on, there are many attractions to try.

## **Visita al Museo- Visit to the Museum**

### **Spanish**

-Clara: *Niños, aquí estamos, este es el museo de la ciudad.*

-Agatha: *Es enorme.*

-Clara: *Si, generalmente los museos son grandes.*

-Noah: *¿Qué es un museo?*

-Clara: *Es un lugar donde se guardan obras y objetos relacionados con la historia o cosas artísticas.*

-Noah: Ya entiendo.

-Clara: Generalmente hay pinturas, esculturas, en algunos museos hay fósiles, en otros hay objetos que son importantes en la historia, como espadas, armas y otros objetos.

-Noah: ¿Y qué se hace en los museos?

-Clara: Generalmente hay un guía que te explica todo sobre los objetos, su historia, importancia, fecha y otras cosas. En los museos se aprende sobre las cosas que hay dentro y aprecias el arte y la evolución de las cosas con el pasar del tiempo.

-Agatha: suena un poco aburrido.

-Clara: No lo es. ¿Sabías que existe un museo en donde tienen la evolución y modelos de todos los aviones? Tienen el modelo del primer avión que se invento.

-Agatha: Eso si suena más interesante.

-Noah: ¿Podemos ir luego a ese museo?

-Clara: Claro, en las próximas vacaciones.

-Noah: Genial.

## **English**

-Clara: Kids, here we are. This is the city museum.

-Agatha: It's huge.

-Clara: Yes, usually, museums are big.

-Noah: What is a museum?

-Clara: It's a place where you keep artworks and objects related to history or artistic things.

-Noah: I get it.

-Clara: Generally, there are paintings and sculptures. In some museums, there are fossils. In others, there are objects that are important in histories such as swords, weapons, and other objects.

-Noah: And what do you do in museums?

-Clara: Generally, there is a guide that explains everything about objects, their history, importance, date, and other things. In museums, you learn about the things inside and appreciate the art and the evolution of things over time.

-Agatha: It sounds a little boring.

-Clara: It's not. Did you know there's a museum where they have the evolution and models of all airplanes? They have the model of the first plane that was invented.

-Agatha: That does sound more interesting.

-Noah: Can we go to that museum next?

-Clara: Sure, in the next holidays.

-Noah: Great.

## **Día de relajación- Relax day**

### **Spanish**

*-Clara: Hoy tendremos un día de relajación.*

*-Agatha: ¿A qué te refieres?*

*-Clara: Iremos a un spa, nos darán masajes, nos bañaremos en aguas termales, nos harán mascarillas, entraremos a un sauna y nos relajaremos como nunca antes.*

*-Agatha: Suena muy bien.*

*-Noah: No me llama la atención.*

*-Clara: Ya hemos hecho muchas actividades, el cuerpo debe descansar un poco y por eso iremos.*

*-Noah: Yo no estoy cansado.*

*-Clara: Verás que al finalizar el día, estarás más descansado.*

*-Noah: Lo dudo.*

## **English**

-Clear: Today, we will have a day of relaxation.

-Agatha: What do you mean?

-Clara: We'll go to a spa, get massages, bathe in hot springs, get masks, go into a sauna, and relax like never before.

-Agatha: Sounds very good.

-Noah: It is not interesting.

-Clara: We have already done many activities. The body must rest a little, and that's why we'll go.

-Noah: I'm not tired.

-Clara: You'll see that at the end of the day, you'll be more rested.

-Noah: I doubt it.

# Chapter 13 - Spanish Language Quirks

Like any language, Spanish has its quirks and foibles, but it's very straightforward in a lot of ways, so these quirks shouldn't present you with too many problems. And there certainly are not so many as you find in the English language. It's not essential to learn about them, but just being aware of them will help you to become more proficient in the language, and help you to sound more like a local.

## Apocopation

Apocopation is the practice of shortening some adjectives whenever they precede masculine nouns. Other than a few exceptions, apocopation never happens with feminine nouns, so as a quirky way to remind yourself when to apocopate, just say to yourself 'Cut a bit off the male.'

You may even have been apocopating without even realizing what you were doing. For example, if you go out for a snack at lunchtime, you may well ask for '*un bocadillo* .' On the other hand, if you want to eat more healthily, you may order '*una ensalada* .' The masculine '*uno* ' (meaning one) is the most common example of apocopation, and if you speak a little Spanish each day, you're almost certain to have used it in its shortened form.

'*Bueno* ' – which means 'good' - is another common adjective that is always shortened with masculine nouns. So, when the waiter brings your lunch, he'll say '*buen provecho* .' However, the guy in the Tabac who sells you your Euromillions lottery ticket will say '*buena suerte* ,' because *suerte* - meaning luck - is feminine, so there are no bits to cut off.

These are the most common short form adjectives:

*bueno* - *buen* (good)

*malo* - *mal* (bad)

*postrero* - *postrer* (final, last)

*uno* - *un* (one, a)

*primero* - *primer* (first)

*tercero* - *tercer* (third)

*alguno* - *algún* (some)

*ninguno* - *ningún* (none)

Other short form adjectives you need to know are *grande*, which becomes '*gran*' when preceding both masculine and feminine nouns. *Ciento* (100) becomes '*cien*' in certain instances, and *cualquiera* - meaning 'any' or 'whatever' - loses the '*a*' at the end.

This is Spanish we're learning, so there is always something that goes against the rules and is different. Where apocopation is concerned, it's the word '*santo*,' which means 'saint.' This is only shortened when it precedes certain proper nouns, but not those beginning with 'Do' or 'To.' So to be correct, you'd say '*San Juan*,' and '*Santo Tomas*.'

As a matter of fact, as you get used to the flow of the Spanish language, you'll find yourself automatically apocopating, simply because it sounds better as you speak. If you don't apocopate, nobody will die, so don't worry too much. However, if you do, you'll sound more like the native speakers, and ultimately, that's what you're aiming for.

## **Comparatives and superlatives**

Making comparisons in Spanish is very different to the English way. In English, you'd simply say 'big, bigger, biggest,' where big is the standard adjective, bigger is a comparative, and biggest is the superlative. However, it doesn't work that way in Spanish.

Taking *grande* (big) as an example to compare like for like, there is no equivalent in Spanish of the -er and -est comparative and superlative. Instead, the language makes use of the words *más* (more) and *menos* (less). So, bigger is *más grande* (literally more big), and biggest is *el más grande*. (The more big, literally, which sounds rather odd to English or American ears, but makes perfect sense to Spanish speakers).

While you're not likely to use superlatives all that often, you could find yourself using comparatives more frequently than you might expect. For example, when shopping for clothing and shoes, you might need to ask for a



smaller or larger size in something. Here are a couple of examples to illustrate comparatives in action.

*¿Tienes esta falda en una talla más pequeña?*

Do you have this skirt in a smaller size?

*Quiero una talla más grande, por favor.*

I would like a larger size, please.

Notice the word order – the noun (size) precedes the adjective (smaller/larger).

### **Older and younger**

Another example of the use of comparatives is when saying one person is older or younger than another. The Spanish words for young and old are *joven* and *viejo/vieja* respectively. You may think ‘más joven’ is younger, and ‘más viejo’ is older, based on what you’ve just learned about Spanish comparatives, and while that is understandable, it’s also wrong!

There are special comparative expressions for ‘younger’ and ‘older’, and they are ‘*menor que*’ and ‘*mayor que*,’ meaning ‘younger than’ and ‘older than’ respectively. Here are a couple of examples.

*Maria es menor que su hermano*

Maria is younger than her brother

*Juan es mayor que Pedro*

Juan is older than Pedro

Take some time to construct a few sentences using ‘*menor que*’ and ‘*mayor que*,’ using members of your family and friends – it’s great practice, and it will help you to familiarize yourself with these comparatives.

### **Best and worst**

The Spanish words for best and worst are ‘*mejor*’ and ‘*peor*.’ There’s nothing quirky about that, but there is a slight difference in the way they

work in speech and writing. As you surely know by now, in Spanish, the adjective follows the noun.

This is not the case with *mejor* and *peor*. For example, if you are describing a shirt by color, you would say ‘*Mi camisa roja .*’ (My red shirt). However, if you were talking about your best shirt, you would say, ‘*Mi mejor camisa .*’ Here’s how *mejor* and *peor* work in sentences.

Examples:

*Maria es la mejor estudiante en la clase*

Maria is the best student in the class

*Es la peor excusa de todas*

That is the worst excuse of all

*Las mejores cosas en la vida son gratis*

The best things in life are free

*él es el peor doctor en el hospital*

He is the worst doctor in the hospital

*Mejor* and *peor* can also be preceded by ‘*lo*’ to mean ‘the best/worst thing,’ without the need to use the noun ‘*cosa*.’

# Chapter 14 - Restaurant — Restaurante

**cubiertos** (koo-byehr-tohs) Masculine noun - silverware

*En los restaurantes, es importante la higiene de los cubiertos.*

In restaurants, the hygiene of cutlery is important.

**mesero** (meh-seh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - waiter

*Los meseros son una parte fundamental en los restaurantes.*

The waiters are a fundamental part of the restaurants.

**mesa** (meh-sah) Feminine noun - table

*Las mesas deben estar impecables y correctamente adornadas con manteles.*

The tables should be impeccable and properly decorated with tablecloths.

**chef** (shehf) Masculine or Feminine noun - chef

*El chef es el maestro de cocina que se encarga de elaborar los platos especiales.*

The chef is the master of the kitchen and is responsible for preparing the special dishes.

**menú** (meh-noo) Masculine noun - menu

*El menú en un restaurante debe ser diverso claro comprensible y bien presentado.*

The menu in a restaurant must be understood easily and presented well.

**cocina** (koh-see-nah) Feminine noun - kitchen

*La cocina de un restaurante debe estar en buen estado y siempre limpia.*

The kitchen of a restaurant must be in good condition and always clean.

**nevera** (neh-beh-rah) Feminine noun - refrigerator

*Es necesario que los restaurantes tengan una nevera suficientemente amplia y bien abastecida.*

It is necessary that restaurants have a sufficiently large and well-stocked fridge.

**plato** (plah-toh) Masculine noun - plate

*Los platos no solo deben estar limpios también los debe haber de todos los tamaños.*

The dishes must not only be clean, they must also be of all sizes.

**despensa** (dehs-pehn-sah) Feminine noun - pantry

*La despensa de los restaurantes contiene los insumos y víveres necesarios.*

The restaurant's pantry contains the necessary supplies and provisions.

**ayudante de cocina** (ah-yoo-dahn-teh deh koh-see-nah) Masculine or Feminine noun - kitchen assistant

*Los ayudantes de cocina son los que apoyan al chef en todo momento.*

The kitchen assistants are the ones who support the chef at all times.

**cuchara** (koo-chah-rah) Feminine noun - spoon

*La cuchara estaba tan sucia que parecía el dedo de un mono.*

The spoon was so dirty; it looked like a monkey's finger.

**cuchillo** (koo-chee-yoh) Masculine noun - knife

*El cuchillo lo afilaron tanto que podías cortar las pezuñas de un rinoceronte.*

The knife was sharpened so much that you could cut the hooves of a rhinoceros.

**tenedor** (teh-neh-dohr) Masculine noun - fork

*La cocina estaba equipada con todo pero no tenía ni un solo tenedor.*

The kitchen was equipped with everything but did not have a single fork.

**vaso** (bah-soh) Masculine noun - cup, glass

*Se cortó la mano con el vaso de vidrio que se cayó de la despensa.*

He cut his hand with the glass tumbler that fell from the pantry.

**cuenco** (kwehng-koh) Masculine noun - bowl

*El cuenco se desbordó de agua y todo el piso quedó mojado.*

The bowl overflowed with water, and the entire floor became wet.

**servilleta** (sehr-bee-yeh-tah) Feminine noun - napkin

*Le gustaba dibujar, pintar y hacer garabatos en las servilletas.*

He liked to draw, paint, and make doodle on the napkins.

**aperitivo** (ah-peh-ree-tee-boh) Masculine noun - appetizer

*Los aperitivos tienen la función de abrir el apetito.*

The appetizers have the function of creating the appetite.

**desayuno** (dehs-ah-yoo-noh) Masculine noun - breakfast

*El desayuno es la comida más importante del día.*

Breakfast is the most important meal of the day.

**postre** (pohs-treh) Masculine noun - dessert

*Hay gente que de verdad no se le debería permitir comer el postre.*

There are people who really should not be allowed to eat dessert.

**cena** (seh-nah) Feminine noun - dinner

*La cena debe ser ligera sencilla y humilde para no tener el sueño pesado.*

Dinner should be light simple and humble so as not to have a heavy sleep.

**almuerzo** (ahl-mwehr-soh) Masculine noun - lunch

*Muchas personas prefieren almorzar en la calle que en sus casas.*

Many people prefer to have lunch on the street rather than in their homes.

**plato principal** (plah-toh preen-see-pahl) Masculine noun - main dish

*La mayoría de las veces el plato principal no es tan bueno como el aperitivo.*

Most of the time, the main course is not as good as the appetizer.

## Chapter 15 - Professions — Profesiones

**bombero** (boh-m-beh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - firefighter

*Los bomberos no siempre apagan el fuego también rescatan gatos.*

Firefighters do not always put out the fires; they also rescue cats.

**mecánico** (meh-kah-nee-koh) Masculine or Feminine noun - mechanic

*El mecánico estuvo seis horas revisando el motor de ese auto.*

The mechanic spent six hours checking the engine of that car.

**médico** (meh-dee-koh) Masculine or Feminine noun - doctor

*El médico le dijo a su paciente que debía reposar por dos semanas.*

The doctor told his patient that he should rest for two weeks.

**boxeador** (boh-k-seh-ah-dohr) Masculine or Feminine noun - boxer

*Los boxeadores entrenan muy duro y cuidan su salud para estar en forma.*

The boxers train very hard and take care of their health to be fit.

**abogado** (ah-boh-gah-doh) Masculine or Feminine noun - lawyer

*El abogado tuvo que investigar el caso a fondo durante ocho meses.*

The lawyer had to investigate the case thoroughly for eight months.

**veterinario** (beh-teh-ree-nah-ryoh) Masculine or Feminine noun - veterinarian

*Ese veterinario les salvó la vida a seis animales en un día.*

That veterinarian saved six animals in one day.

**arquitecto** (ahr-kee-tehk-toh) Masculine or Feminine noun - architect

*Se necesitaron cuatro arquitectos para revisar los planos de ese centro comercial.*

It took four architects to review the plans for that mall.

**dentista** (dehn-tees-tah) Masculine or Feminine noun - dentist

*El dentista asistió al congreso de odontología que se realizó en Italia.*

The dentist attended the conference of dentistry that was held in Italy.

**astronauta** (ahs-troh-now-tah) Masculine or Feminine noun - astronaut

*Los astronautas pasaron cinco meses reparando la estación espacial de Marte.*

The astronauts spent five months repairing the space station on Mars.

**músico** (moo-see-koh) Masculine or Feminine noun - musician

*Los músicos de la banda se fueron de gira por Latinoamérica.*

The musicians of the band went on tour in Latin America.

**periodista** (peh-ryoh-dees-tah) Masculine or Feminine noun - journalist

*El periodista recibió el premio Pulitzer por su reportaje sobre los emigrantes.*

The journalist received the Pulitzer Prize for his report on emigrants.

**carpintero** (kahr-peen-teh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - carpenter

*Al carpintero le encargaron fabricar tres camas dos sillas y una mesa grande.*

The carpenter was commissioned to make three beds, two chairs, and a large table.

**escritor** (ehs-kree-tohr) Masculine or Feminine noun- writer

*El escritor terminó de escribir su última novela y la entregó a tiempo a su editorial.*

The writer finished writing his latest novel and delivered it on time to his publisher.

**actor** (ahk-duhr) Masculine or Feminine noun - actor



*El discurso de aceptación del actor en la ceremonia de entrega de los premios Oscar fue muy emotivo.*

The acceptance speech of the actor in the Oscar awards ceremony was very emotional.

**científico** (syehn-tee-fee-koh) Masculine or Feminine noun - scientist

*La sociedad científica le otorgó el máximo galardón al científico por sus aportes a la humanidad.*

The scientific society gave the highest award to the scientist for his contributions to humanity.

**cocinero** (koh-see-neh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - cook

*Para la fiesta de fin de año contrataron a los mejores cocineros del país.*

For the end-of-the-year party, they hired the best chefs in the country.

**chofer** (choh-fehr) Masculine or Feminine noun - chauffeur

*El chofer manejó durante 14 horas seguidas demostrando resistencia y control.*

The driver drove for 14 straight hours, demonstrating resistance and control.

**piloto** (pee-loh-toh) Masculine or Feminine noun - pilot

*Los pilotos de aviación comercial tienen una gran responsabilidad para sus pasajeros.*

Commercial aviation pilots have a great deal of responsibility for their passengers.

**agricultor** (ah-gree-kool-tohr) Masculine or Feminine noun - farmer

*El trabajo del agricultor es muy importante porque sin campo no hay ciudad.*

The work of the farmer is very important because, without a field, there is no city.

**docente** (doh-sehn-teh) Masculine or Feminine noun - teacher

*Los maestros y maestras son responsables de la educación de las generaciones futuras.*

Teachers and professors are responsible for the education of future generations.

**camionero** (kah-myoh-neh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - truck driver

*Los camioneros son las personas que comen más comida chatarra en todo el mundo.*

Truck drivers are the people who eat the most junk food in the whole world.

**consejero** (kohn-seh-heh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - counselor

*Un consejero es alguien que enseña mejor lo que el mismo necesita aprender.*

A counselor is someone who teaches better than what they need to learn.

**enfermero** (ehm-fehr-meh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun - nurse

*El enfermero es a veces mucho más importante que el doctor y trabaja más.*

The nurse is sometimes much more important than the doctor and works harder.

**farmacéutico** (fahr-mah-seyoo-tee-koh) Masculine noun - pharmacist

*Un farmacéutico es una persona sin escrúpulos que negocia la salud de la gente.*

A pharmacist is an unscrupulous person who negotiates the health of people.

**juez** (hwehs) Masculine or Feminine noun - judge

*Es casi ciencia ficción decir que existe un juez que no sea corrupto.*

It is almost science fiction to say that there is a judge who is not corrupt.

**padre** (pah-dreh) Masculine noun - priest

*Ser padre de oficio significa explicar con fé lo que el mismo no entiende ni practica.*

Being a father by trade means explaining with faith what he does not understand or practice.

# Chapter 16- Transportation — Transporte

**transporte** (trahns-pohr-teh) Masculine noun - transportation

*El transporte es cómo se transfieren los objetos y las personas.*

Transportation is how objects and people are transferred.

**transporte terrestre** (trahns-pohr-teh teh-rrehs-treh) Masculine noun - land transport

*El transporte terrestre es el que se realiza sobre ruedas como automóviles y motocicletas.*

Land transport is carried out on wheels like cars and motorcycles.

**señales de tránsito** (see-nyal-ehs deh trahn-see-toh) Plural noun - road signs

*Las señales de tránsito son los signos usados en la vía pública para dar la información correcta.*

Traffic signs are the signs used on public roads to give the correct information.

**carreteras** (kah-rreh-teh-rah) Feminine noun - highway

*Una carretera es una ruta de dominio y uso público construida para el movimiento*

*de vehículos.*

A highway is a route of domain and public use built for the movement of vehicles.

**autopistas** (ow-toh-pees-tah) Feminine noun - freeway

*Las autopistas son aquellas que son rápidas, seguras y con un gran volumen de tráfico.*

The highways are those that are fast and safe and contain a large volume of traffic.

**autobus** (ow-toh-boos) Masculine noun - bus

*El autobús es un vehículo diseñado para transportar numerosas personas por las vías urbanas.*

The bus is a vehicle designed to transport many people through urban roads.

**taxi** (tahk-si) Masculine noun - taxi

*Ese taxi tenía una tarifa muy alta y preferí hacer el viaje en autobús.*

That taxi had a very high fare, and I preferred to take a bus trip.

**tren** (trehn) Masculine noun - train

*Este tren es uno de los más rápidos del mundo y las tarifas son económicas.*

This train is one of the fastest in the world, and the rates are cheap.

**metro** (meh-troh) Masculine noun - metro

*Las grandes ciudades prefieren el metro subterráneo como opción de transporte.*

Large cities prefer the underground metro as a transportation option.

**motocicleta** (moh-toh-see-kleh-tah) Feminine noun - motorcycle

*Las motocicletas son el medio de transporte ideal para evitar el tráfico.*

Motorcycles are the ideal means of transport to avoid traffic.

**carro** (kah-rroh) Masculine noun - car

*El carro del vecino tenía fallas en el motor y el parachoques roto.*

The neighbor's car had a broken engine and bumper.

**bicicleta** (bee-see-kleh-tah) Feminine noun - bicycle

*La bicicleta es un transporte ecológico y a la vez deportivo .*

The bicycle is an ecological and sporty transport at the same time.

**bote** (boh-teh) Masculine noun - boat

*Todos los fines de semana llevó a mis hijos a pasear en bote.*

Every weekend, he took my children for a boat ride.

**ciclomotor** (see-cloh-moh-tohr) Masculine noun - moped

*Prefiero el ciclomotor porque es mucho más rápido y seguro.*

I prefer the moped because it is much faster and safer.

## **Chapter 17 - Yes, No, Please, Thanks: Basic Vocabulary**

Along with the basic verbs that you learned in the last lesson, these are also some basic words you need to know to get by: yes, no, please, thanks.

yes – *sí*

no – *no*

please – *por favor*

thanks – *gracias*

Now that you know how to say these four words, you can travel in a Spanish-speaking country without being considered rude.

Let's see a few other expressions and words that might turn out useful in case you want to make a really good impression:

sorry – *perdón*

I am sorry – *lo siento / lo lamento*

excuse me – *disculpe*

thanks – *gracias*

thank you very much – *muchas gracias*

you are welcome – *de nada*

never mind – *no hay por qué*

it is fine – *está bien*

of course – *Por supuesto*

of course not – *Por supuesto que no*

absolutely – *absolutamente*

not at all – *para nada*

for sure – *Sin lugar a duda / Por supuesto / Pero claro*

Let's use all of these in sentences:

Yes, I also need a ticket – **Sí** , *yo también necesito un billete*

No, I don't eat meat – **No** , *no como carne*

Please, could you point me to the train station? – **Por favor** , *¿podría indicarme dónde está la estación de trenes?*

Thanks, you are very kind – **Gracias** , *eres muy amable*

Sorry, I did not see you there – **Perdón** , *no te vi ahí*

I am sorry, I do not have any cash on me – **Lo lamento** , *no tengo nada de efectivo conmigo*

Excuse me, do you work here? – **Disculpe** , *¿usted trabaja aquí?*

Thanks, but that is not necessary – **Gracias** , *pero eso no es necesario*

Thank you very much! It is delicious! – ¡ **Muchas gracias** ! ¡ *Está delicioso!*

You are welcome, I also have extra water just in case – **De nada** , *también tengo agua de más por si acaso*

Never mind, you would have done it for me too – **No hay por qué** , *tú también lo habrías hecho por mí*

It is fine; I do not need anything – **Está bien** ; *no necesito nada*

Of course I want to go – **Claro que quiero ir**

Of course not, that was not me – **Claro que no** , *ese no fui yo*

Absolutely, I will be there at 7 – **Absolutamente** , *voy a estar ahí a las 7*

Not at all, it was not trouble for me – **Para nada** , *no fue ningún problema*

For sure, tell me what you need, and I will bring it – *Por supuesto , dime qué necesitas, y yo te lo traigo*

When James gets back from the beach, he sees Andrea at the hostel reception:

JAMES: Excuse me, Andrea, may I ask you a question? – *Disculpa, Andrea, ¿puedo hacerte una pregunta?*

ANDREA: Of course, James! Whatever you need – *¡Claro, James! Lo que necesites*

JAMES: Thank you – *Gracias*

ANDREA: Don't worry, tell me – *No hay de qué, dime*

JAMES: I am really sorry, but I lost my map – *Lo siento mucho, pero he perdido mi mapa*

ANDREA: Don't worry! We have millions – *¡No te preocupes! Tenemos millones*

JAMES: Are you sure? – *¿Estás segura?*

ANDREA: For sure, yes. Here, take one – *Por supuesto, sí. Aquí, toma uno*

JAMES: Thanks a lot, Andrea, you are the best! – *Muchas gracias, Andrea, ¡eres la mejor!*

ANDREA: Yes, I know! – *Sí, ¡lo sé!*

## **What's Happening? The Present Tense (Part I)**

This is not meant to be a boring grammar book, so you won't be driven crazy with conjugation rules that you need to learn by heart. However, what will be explained in this lesson might actually turn to be quite useful to understand why verbs are conjugated the way they are. There is no need to memorize this, but it will inevitably happen once you start learning more and more verbs.

Some of the verbs before were irregular verbs. This means they don't follow the normal rules of conjugation. This is why a verb like *ser* (to be)



can be conjugated into words that sound nothing like *ser*: *eres* (you are), for example—it is completely irregular. Now, luckily for you, most verbs in Spanish are actually regular. This means they follow three basic models of conjugation, depending on whether they end on *-ar*, *-er* or *-ir* .

Regular verbs that end in *-ar* always follow the same structure and add the same letters after the ‘root’ of the verb. You can find the root of a verb easily. Just take *-ar*, *-er* or *-ir* off it in its infinitive form and you will have the root. For verb *amar* (to love), for example, the root is *am-*.

### **Amar (to love)**

*yo am o*

*tú am as / vos am ás / usted am a*

*él/ella am a*

*nosotros am amos*

*ustedes am an / vosotros am áis*

*ellos/ellas am an*

Regular verbs that end in *-er* also follow the same structure and add the same letters after the root of the verb, as in the following example. For the verb *temer* (to fear), the root is *tem-*.

### **Temer (to fear)**

*yo tem o*

*tú tem es / vos tem és / usted tem e*

*él/ella tem e*

*nosotros tem emos*

*ustedes tem en / vosotros tem éis*

*ellos/ellas tem en*

Regular verbs that end in *-ir* also follow the same structure and add the same letters after the root of the verb, as in the following example. For the verb *vivir* (to live), the root is *viv-*.

## **Vivir (to live)**

*yo viv o*

*tú viv **es** / vos viv **ís** / usted viv **e***

*él/ella viv **e***

*nosotros viv **imos***

*ustedes viv **en** / vosotros viv **ís***

*ellos/ellas viv **en***

As you can see, in all cases, for the singular first person, *yo* , you just need to add an *o* to the root of the verb:

*Caminar* (to walk): I walk in the park – *Yo **camino** en el parque*

*Beber* (to drink): I only drink beer – *Solo **bebo** cerveza*

*Partir* (to leave): I leave tomorrow morning – *Yo **parto** mañana por la mañana*

For *tú* , you just add *-as* or *-es* :

*Extrañar* (to miss): Do you miss your sister? – ¿ ***Extrañas** a tu hermana?*

*Creer* (to believe): You do not believe in magic – *No **crees** en la magia*

*Abrir* (to open): Do you open the door? – ¿ ***Abres** la puerta?*

For *él* or *ella* , you, as in English, normally add an *s*. In Spanish, you just have to add an *a* or *e* :

*Escribir* (to write): She never writes – *Ella nunca **escribe***

*Hablar* (to talk): He talks too much – *Él **habla** demasiado*

*Vender* (to sell): She sells her soul for a snack – *Ella **vende** su alma por un bocadillo*

For *nosotros* , you add either *-amos*, *-emos* or *-imos* :

*Alquilar* (to rent): We rent the same apartment every year – *Todos los años **alquilamos** el mismo piso*

*Aprender* (to learn): We never learn! – ¡*Nunca **aprendemos**!*

*Asistir* (to attend): Tonight we attend the party no matter what – *Hoy **asistimos** a la fiesta de cualquier forma*

For *vosotros* , you have to add *-áis* , *-éis* or *-ís* :

*Ayudar* (to help): Why don't you help with the cleaning? – *¿Por qué no **ayudáis** con la limpieza?*

*Leer* (to read): You read all day – ***Leéis** todo el día*

*Compartir* (to share): You share everything you do on social media – ***Compartís** todo lo que hacéis en redes sociales*

Finally, for *ellos*, *ellas* , and *ustedes* , you have to add *-an* or *-en* to the root of the verb:

*Cocinar* (to cook): They cook every night – ***Cocinan** todas las noches*

*Responder* (to answer): You always answer late – ***Responden** siempre tarde*

*Decidir* (to decide): They decide what to do with their lives – ***Ellas deciden** qué hacer con sus vidas*

James and Alex want to surprise the girls. They are cooking dinner for everybody! They are in the hostel's kitchen making some risotto with vegetables and seafood:

ALEX: How lucky you are here! I cook very bad – *¡Qué suerte que estás aquí! Yo **cocino** muy mal*

JAMES: Do you think I am a chef, or something like that? I'm not so good – *¿ **Creéis** que soy un chef o algo así? No soy tan bueno*

ALEX: We help each other – *Nos **ayudamos** el uno al otro*

JAMES: I learn a few things about rice while we do this – **Aprendo** algunas cosas sobre el arroz mientras lo hacemos

ALEX: Like what? – ¿Qué **aprendes** ?

JAMES: That it gets done faster while I drink beer – *Que se **cocina** más rápido cuando **bebo** cerveza*

ALEX: I miss Australian beer! – ¡ **Extraño** la cerveza australiana!

JAMES: There is a bar nearby where they sell Foster's – *Hay un bar cerca de aquí donde **venden** Foster's*

ALEX: Really? I'm leaving right now – ¿De veras? **Parto** ahora mismo

JAMES: No way! You help me until we are done and after dinner I will take you there – ¡De ningún modo! Me **ayudas** hasta que terminemos y después de cenar te llevo.

## **What's Happening?: The Present Tense (Part II)**

There is another way to talk about things that are actually happening right now.

The construction of the present conjugation of verb *estar* + *the gerund of another verb* is very similar to the English present continuous: I am cooking, I am talking, I am walking.

While the English gerund always ends with -ing, the Spanish gerund ends in -ando or -endo .

### **Cocinar (To cook)**

yo **estoy cocin ando**

tú **estás cocin ando** / vos **estás cocin ando** / usted **está cocin ando**

él/ella **está cocin ando**

nosotros **estamos cocin ando**

ustedes **están cocin ando** / vosotros **estáis cocin ando**

ellos/ellas **están cocin ando**

**Beber (to drink)**

yo **estoy beb iendo**

tú **estás beb iendo** / vos **estás beb iendo** / usted **está beb iendo**

él/ella **está beb iendo**

nosotros **estamos beb iendo**

ustedes **están beb iendo** / vosotros **estáis beb iendo**

ellos/ellas **están beb iendo**

**Escribir (to write)**

yo **estoy escrib iendo**

tú **estás escrib iendo** / vos **estás escrib iendo** / usted **está escrib iendo**

él/ella **está escrib iendo**

nosotros **estamos escrib iendo**

ustedes **están escrib iendo** / vosotros **estáis escrib iendo**

ellos/ellas **están escribiendo**

These are some sentences with verb *estar* + *gerund* that you might use a lot while traveling:

I am traveling – *Estoy viajando*

I am getting to know Spain – *Estoy conociendo España*

I am learning Spanish – *Estoy aprendiendo español*

I am taking a year off – *Me estoy tomando un año sabático*

I am falling in love with this country – *Me estoy enamorando de este país*

You might use this construction a lot while making plans:

I am leaving – *Me estoy yendo* (*yendo* is the gerund of verb *ir* , to go)

I am going to your hotel – *Estoy yendo a tu hotel*

I am coming – *Estoy llegando*

Juan is calling a taxi – *Juan está llamando un taxi*

The food is arriving – *La comida está llegando*

You can definitely use *estar* + *gerund* to talk about your life at present:

I am working for a company – *Estoy trabajando en una empresa*

I am studying in university – *Estoy estudiando en la universidad*

I am saving money to travel some more – *Estoy ahorrando para viajar más*

I am thinking about quitting my job – *Estoy pensando en renunciar*

James and Alex's meal is ready, but the girls are nowhere to be seen:

JAMES: Do you think they are coming? – *¿Crees que **están viniendo** ?*

ALEX: I don't know. I'm texting María – *No lo sé. **Estoy escribiendo un mensaje a María***

MARÍA: Who are you texting? – *¿A quién **estás escribiendo** ?*

JAMES: Girls! You are here! – *¡Chicas! ¡Estáis aquí!*

ANDREA: Yes, and we are starving – *Sí, nos **estamos muriendo de hambre***

ALEX: That is great because we are waiting for you with a surprise – *Eso es genial, porque las **estamos esperando con una sorpresa***

ALICIA: Is that a risotto or am I hallucinating? – *¿Eso es un risotto o **estoy alucinando** ?*

ALEX AND JAMES: Surprise!!! – *¡¡¡Sorpresa!!!*

Here are some other examples of this construction:

Verb to buy – *comprar* : I am buying a surfboard – ***Estoy comprando una tabla de surf***

Verb to travel – *viajar* : You are traveling a lot – ***Estás viajando mucho***

Verb to book – *reservar* : We are booking a room – ***Estamos reservando una habitación***

Verb to talk – *hablar* : They are talking – ***Ellos están hablando***

# Chapter 18 - Practice makes Perfect

We've established that you will need to create a learning program for yourself that includes immersion into both the Spanish language and culture. You already know that you should read, write, and speak in Spanish every day to keep yourself on pace to meet your deadline. At this point, you should focus on getting to a point where you can communicate effectively. Be sure to break out of the self-imposed isolation that is common when studying Spanish. Once you've built up an arsenal of common and personalized phrases, it's time to practice them in the real world! If you haven't located a Spanish language partner, you'll want to find someone fast.

Practicing your Spanish will improve your functional ability to use the skills you've learned so far. Interacting with native Spanish speakers regularly can improve your new language skills dramatically. You'll hear authentic pronunciations, expansive vocabularies, and accurate grammar. Finding a consistent language partner can help you to avoid getting discouraged by not finding informational content that's exactly at your pace, since you'll be able to communicate with them if something is too easy or advanced.

## **Traditional Methods of Practice**

If you already know any Spanish speakers, reach out to them directly and ask if they would be able to go over a few things with you. Set up a video chat date with them once or twice a month, or if they are local, meet up for coffee. Being able to speak with a native Spanish speaker in person is best.

You may not know anyone personally that speaks Spanish, but there are plenty of other ways to practice. For example, there are lots of people online that you can have anything— from quick chats to full-length discussions with — entirely in Spanish. There are websites dedicated to help you break down the barriers that typically prevent people from really understanding Spanish.



## **Language Exchange**

In addition to typical language partners, there are Language Exchange opportunities as well. A language exchange partner is what it exactly sounds like. These are people looking for someone to practice English with, and they can be super helpful with your Spanish. You might be able to find an exchange partner that will work with you one-on-one in exchange for your help. Be sure to set up a defined time-frame for your conversations and work on English half of that time, and the other half in Spanish. There are language exchange boards and forums all over the world that you can search. Some people will be upfront with what they need help with and how much of a time commitment they are able to dedicate. Make a post yourself and let prospective language exchange partners know what you'd like to work on and your availability.

## **Ask a stranger**

Don't be afraid to talk to strangers and try and grow a thick skin. If you hear people talking Spanish when you're out and about, be brave enough to ask them for the time or even directions. Chances are most people are more than happy to answer your question. It's quite possible that they will respond to you quickly and that you may not understand; don't worry and don't get defensive! Getting defensive is way more likely to make the exchange uncomfortable than simple Spanish slip-ups. Just tell them that you're new to Spanish and ask if they can repeat what they said slowly or help you understand what they meant. While this can be a difficult thing to ask of strangers, it's a great way to get out of your comfort zone, and once you've been corrected in a real-world scenario, the chances that you'll remember the correct words for next time are very high.

## **Unconventional Approaches**

### **Call restaurants and bakeries**

There are plenty of unconventional approaches to practicing your Spanish as well. Make a list of Mexican or any Spanish speaking restaurants anywhere in the country. For example, you can call them and ask if you

would need to make a reservation if you have a group of 7 people wanting to dine next weekend on Saturday at around 7:30 p.m. Have a script prepared for yourself before you call. Be sure to greet the person and then follow your script. There are a few different ways that you can ask this, so have those options ready to go and try them out on different phone calls. If they don't speak Spanish, simply move on to another number. Mix up the number of people on the reservation, the day, and the time that you're asking about. You could even actually make a reservation, and then call back later that day or week and cancel it. You could also simply call to ask what hours they are open, or if they have vegetarian options. Another great way to get real-world practice is to look up Latin grocery or bakeries in your area. You could make up a scenario where you call or go in and ask if they make custom birthday cakes and get pricing and details.

### **Get on the Phone**

Try calling 1-800 numbers that have Spanish menus. Look up numbers for banks, airlines, internet providers, or any company you assume would have Spanish speaking clientele. Again, have a scenario picked out, or if you're feeling bold, improvise something based on the menu options. Before going into a call, pretend that while you may just be learning Spanish, your native language isn't English. "Lo siento, no hablo ingles" (I'm sorry, I don't speak English) will help them continue to attempt communication with you in Spanish. Some companies have an online option for a live chat. This can be a great way to practice both writing and reading.

### **Take it to the Kitchen**

If you like to cook, you can find a wealth of Spanish cookbooks that will test out your reading comprehension and give your palate a new way to branch out. Watch a Spanish cooking show and attempt to recreate a dish you are interested in. You can search for recipes in Spanish by dish, or find a recipe you love and translate it yourself. Make a list of items you need and go to a Hispanic grocery store so that you can reinforce the language you're learning. When you're preparing the meal, read every step out loud so that you can get verbal practice.

## **Help Others**

Volunteer organizations hold opportunities to interact with Spanish speakers as well. Perform a quick search for organizations that are active in your community and find out what kind of help they're looking for where you may get exposure to Spanish speakers. Some excellent volunteer programs focus on improving language skills while volunteering time towards a good cause. Make a few calls and ask the organizers if they are familiar with anything in line with your needs. Of course, giving back to underprivileged people in your community can be an advantageous experience in and of itself.

Remember to keep things light-hearted and fun. If you can learn to relax and go with the flow, you will naturally fall into the rhythm of the Spanish language. Commit to getting the most out of every opportunity you must practice, and you'll move from beginner to intermediate, and to advanced in no time.

# Chapter 19 - A Day in the Life of a Language Learner

If you haven't figured it out yet, the official motto of this book is: Quality over Quantity. You may feel like you need to spend hours every day pouring over your Spanish books to really learn Spanish. The truth is, this isn't necessarily true. What matters is that the time you do dedicate to studying is productive. It's important that you maintain a good balance between structured "book-learning" and hands-on immersion practice and exposure.

In order to do that, take a look at the following rough guide for how to live the daily life of a Spanish language learner. In addition to your scheduled study sessions consisting of books and conjugation charts, be sure to incorporate:

## **Listening Skills**

10 Minutes a Day

Listening is crucial to your Spanish learning process. Hearing the language used in authentic contexts by native speakers will help, not only with your comprehension abilities, but your speaking as well. Listening is your input and speaking will be your output.

Listening to Spanish podcasts, music, radio, audio books, etc. are simple, enjoyable ways to incorporate listening practice into your daily routine.

## **Grammar Skills**

15 Minutes a Day

The foundation of any language is its grammar. Spanish is no exception to this. Grammar includes things such as verb conjugations, tenses, parts of speech (nouns, adjectives, adverbs, etc.), and sentence structure.

Grammar can be a big challenge and a thorn in the side of any and every foreign language student. Not only are the rules seemingly never ending, but there appear to be as many exceptions to these rules. The main thing to remember when working with grammar is to take it one step at a time. Focus on things in small areas and don't try to rush from one thing to the next. Make sure you give yourself the time you need to fully understand whatever topic you are working with before moving on to the next. Don't put too much pressure on yourself! Grammar is cumulative. You need to ensure that you have all the foundational building blocks understood before you can start building on them.

## **Writing Practice and Vocabulary**

20 Minutes a Day

Writing is something you may not expect to need too much in Spanish. But the fact is, you'd be surprised to find that writing comes up a lot more than you'd think. In addition to that, writing is a great way to improve your vocabulary, grammar, and produce productive output--putting into use the input you receive from reading.

There are many different ways you can practice writing. Your 20 minutes a day doesn't need to be done all at one time. Although, sitting down every once in a while to write out a letter, journal entry, or even short story is great practice. If you don't have the time or energy to do that, though, you can find other little ways to incorporate writing in Spanish into your daily life.

- Write to-do lists in Spanish
- Write out your shopping list in Spanish
- Write reminders to yourself in Spanish
- Sit down with your vocabulary list and write out a few sentences using the new words you're working on

## **Reading**

15 Minutes a Day

Initially, the word “reading” often brings to mind the idea of sitting down with a novel and pouring over it for hours on end. However, this doesn’t have to be the case. You’re constantly reading--everywhere you go. Street signs, menus, these are all things that you read on a day- in and day-out basis.

When looking for things to read in Spanish, don’t limit yourself to just books. Check out some blogs in Spanish or read a Spanish newspaper online. Look up articles on things that interest you.

If you have friends who are also trying to learn Spanish, set up an e-mail exchange with them. This will force you to not only write in Spanish regularly but read in Spanish as well. Not to mention, this will create a community with which you can share your experiences with the language.

### How to Include Spanish in Your Daily Routine

Below you will find a general outline for things you can do at different times of the day to make Spanish a part of your everyday life.

#### **Morning**

7am: Wake up. Set your alarm to go off with a Spanish song or a Spanish radio station. Get your brain thinking in Spanish from the get-go!

7:15am: Breakfast time. While you’re eating your breakfast, open up a Spanish app on your phone or scroll through a Spanish newspaper online.

8:00am: Morning Commute. Listen to Spanish radio in the car or pop in an audio book. Or listen to a podcast on your phone if you take public transport.

#### **Afternoon**

1pm: Lunch break. Read an article online while you enjoy your meal. Or jot down your shopping list and/or to-do list for the evening.

2:45pm: Coffee break. We all need a quick cup of joe at some point in the work day. Use this time to open up an app on your phone to memorize some

vocabulary. Or play a fun Spanish language game online.

5pm: Commute home. It's been a long day. Reward yourself by listening to fun Spanish songs or reading an enjoyable, easy Spanish book on the train.

## **Evening**

8pm: Study Session. After dinner, set aside a solid block of time that you'll dedicate to the "book-learning" side of studying Spanish. Start with at least 20-30 minutes of focused study (grammar, vocabulary, etc.) and, if you're feeling up to it, keep going.

9pm: Relax. Give your brain a break. Try relaxing with a YouTube clip in Spanish, something funny and light-hearted.

10pm: Bedtime. Find a Spanish book to keep on your nightstand to read little by little as you fall asleep at night. Or pop in a Spanish movie to listen to as you drift off.

# Conclusion

Finding Spanish-speaking friends is a great way to test your new language skills. It is very likely that any Spanish-speaking friends that you might have will be more than willing to help you practice what you have learned in this book. Also, this type of practice and exposure will enable you to play with the language so that you can become comfortable with going off-script. This will allow you to truly begin to communicate through the use of what you have actually learned.

If you are planning on traveling, you will find that the language presented in this book will be invaluable as you navigate your way through the various places and situations that you will encounter. Best of all, you will have the opportunity to put yourself to the test. There is an undeniable feeling of satisfaction that comes when you are able to communicate in a foreign language.

We are confident that you found the content in this book useful in any situation. In fact, don't be surprised if you get caught in learning Spanish. You might even choose to pursue your learning even further.

In that case, do check out the subsequent volumes in this series. You will find that they are intended to help you deepen your knowledge and understanding of the Spanish language in such a way that you will be truly on your way to mastering Spanish communication skills.

Learning continues in the next coming Grammar Books for Intermediate and for Advanced.

So, thank you for taking the time to read this book. There are plenty of options out there which claim to teach you Spanish in a short period of time. Unfortunately, some of those courses' under-deliver in terms of value, while others turn out to be a costly experience.



# **Spanish Short Stories for Beginners**

Learn Spanish in a Fast and Easy Way,  
and Grow Your Vocabulary with 16  
Captivating Short Stories

# Introduction

In this book, we are presenting short stories that you can read to practice Spanish language. Each story has its own topic, where important vocabulary is presented before the story. Then, you have the story, which you can read at your own leisure.

Most importantly, you can begin to practice the language that we have discussed throughout this book in an engaging manner. As such, here is a suggested methodology that you can apply to the study of these short stories.

1.- Next, read through the story, paragraph by paragraph. Since you will find the Spanish and English version, you will be able to visualize the structures and conjugations that we have studied throughout this volume. That way, you will be able to make a mental note of the way each structure is presented in real-life. This makes learning grammar and sentence structure a lot more digestible.

2.- Then, go through every one of the paragraphs. When you reach the end of the story, go back to any parts that you feel weren't clear or perhaps you have questions about. You can focus on these parts so that you can get the extra practice that you need. Once you feel comfortable with the whole story, you can then move on to the questions.

3.- The questions following the story are both meant to test your reading comprehension and give you an opportunity to practice your writing skills. This exercise will give you the opportunity to use your imagination when it comes to writing skills.

4.- The suggested responses at the end of the story are meant to serve as a guide. So, you can compare your own answers to the suggested ones. Of course, these are only suggested answers. That means you can very well come up with your own answers according to the passage that you have read.

5.- Finally, please review the vocabulary presented at the end of the story. The words in that vocabulary have been selected in order to help you warm

up for the content in the story. You will find both the Spanish and English words in the list. That way, you won't have to guess their meaning. You can read through the list, and make a note of the words that you find new or challenging.

We have some tips that will help you get the most out of these stories based on the methodology suggested -

- Don't feel that you need to complete the whole story in one session. In fact, each story has been designed so that you can take one paragraph at a time. Also, you can begin with the vocabulary and then take each paragraph as time permits. That way, you won't feel like you have been interrupted. In any case, you can continue where you left off.
- Take your time. There is no need to rush through the stories or any part of this book. This volume can very well serve you as a reference guide. That way, you can always go back to it whenever you have the need to do so.
- Try your best to reserve a specific amount of time each day for study with this book. Even 10 or 15 minutes a day is enough to get you into the habit of daily practice. Since practice is the best way in which you can improve your skills, you will soon find that getting into a rhythm is not as difficult as you thought it would be. So, try to take sometime during a break at work, your daily trip, or even before bedtime to go through parts of each story or any other part of this book. We are sure that you will not only find it enjoyable but also productive.

We hope you enjoy every one of these stories. They have been carefully crafted to provide you with a practical and meaningful experience.

# 1. Present Simple with “AR” Verbs

*Deseo visitar lugares exóticos. Me gusta la selva, los bosques, el mar y las aventuras en lugares emocionantes. Siempre hay alguno nuevo que encontrar en los lugares exóticos. Me gusta mucho visitar la naturaleza.*

I want to visit exotic places. I like the jungle, the forest, the sea and the adventures in exciting places. There is always something new to find in exotic places. I really like to visit nature.

*También me gusta visitar lugares históricos. Por ejemplo, visito ruinas, monumentos y sitios famosos. Todas las ciudades del mundo son especiales. Siempre ando por las calles. Camino en busca de tesoros nuevos. Cuando encuentro un tesoro nuevo, rápidamente le tomo una fotografía. Las fotografías son mis propios tesoros. Son los recuerdos de los viajes tan inolvidables.*

I also like to visit historical places. For example, I visit ruins, monuments and famous sites. Every city in the world is special. I always walk the streets. I walk in search of new treasures. When I find a new treasure, I quickly take a picture of it. Photographs are my own treasures. They are the memories of unforgettable trips.

*Por todas partes, las personas saludan cuando pasas. Te miran y te saludan amablemente. Me gusta charlar con las personas, ...bueno, si hablamos el mismo idioma. No siempre hablamos el mismo idioma, pero siempre nos comunicamos.*

Everywhere, people greet when you pass. They look at you and greet you kindly. I like to chat with people, ... well, if we speak the same language. We do not always speak the same language, but we always communicate.

*La comida también es maravillosa en cada viaje. Disfruto de las comidas auténticas de cada país o ciudad. Las personas trabajan mucho en preparar comida rica y deliciosa. En todos los países se cocina algo muy especial. En muchos lugares, se prepara comida especial para los turistas. Las bebidas tradicionales son una parte importante de la experiencia local. Me gusta mucho probar las bebidas tradicionales, aunque no mucho me gustan las bebidas alcohólicas.*

The food is also wonderful on every trip. I enjoy the authentic foods of each country or city. People work hard to prepare rich and delicious food. In all countries, something very special is cooked. In many places, special food is prepared for tourists. Traditional drinks are an important part of the local experience. I like to try traditional drinks, although I do not like alcoholic beverages.

*Me encanta viajar. Después de trabajar, es lo que más disfruto en la vida. Deseo viajar a todos los países del mundo. Esto es algo que deseo mucho lograr. Una vida sin viajar no es vida.*

I love traveling. Aside from working, it's what I enjoy most in life. I wish to travel to all the countries of the world. This is something I really want to achieve. A life without traveling is not a life.

***Por favor responda las siguientes preguntas.***

Please answer the following questions.

*¿Por qué es fascinante llegar a un lugar nuevo?*

---

---

---

---

Why is it fascinating to arrive at a new place?

---

---

---

---

*¿Qué lugares deseo visitar?*

---

---

---

---

What places do I want to visit?

---

---

---

---

*¿Cuáles lugares me gustan?*

---

---

---

---

What places do I like?

---

---

---

---

*¿Cuáles son los lugares históricos que visito?*

---

---

---

---

What are the historic places that I visit?

---

---

---

---

*¿Qué busco cuando camino?*

---

---

---

---

What do I search for when I walk?

---

---

---

---

*¿Qué hacen las personas cuando pasas?*

---

---

---

---

What do people do when you pass?

---

---

---

---

*¿Cómo es la comida?*

---

---

---

---

What is the food like?

---

---

---

---

*¿Qué comida se prepara para los turistas?*

---

---

---

---

What food is prepared for the tourists?

---

---

---

---

*¿Qué bebidas me gusta probar?*

---

---

---

---

What drinks do I like to try?

---



---

---

---

¿Qué deseo hacer?

---

---

---

---

What do I wish to do?

---

---

---

---

***Respuestas sugeridas***

Suggested answers

*¿Por qué es fascinante llegar a un lugar nuevo? Es fascinante llegar a un lugar nuevo porque puedes observar paisajes, personas, casas y calles. -*

Why is it fascinating to arrive at a new place? It is fascinating to arrive at a new place because you can observe landscapes, people, houses and streets.

*¿Qué lugares deseo visitar? Deseo visitar lugares exóticos como selvas y bosques.*

What places do I want to visit? I want to visit exotics places such as jungles and forests

*¿Cuál lugar me gusta? -*

What place do I like?

*Me gustan mucho la naturaleza.*

I like nature very much.

*¿Cuáles son los lugares históricos que visito?*

What are the historic places that I visit?

*Visito lugares históricos como ruinas y monumentos.*

I visit historic places such as ruins and monuments

*¿Qué busco cuando camino?*

What do I search for when I walk?

*Busco tesoros cuando camino por las calles.*

I search for treasures when I walk on the streets.

*¿Qué hacen las personas cuando pasas?*

What do people do when you pass?

*Las personas te saludan cuando pasas. -*

People greet you when you pass.

*¿Cómo es la comida?*

What is the food like?

*La comida es rica y deliciosa. -*

The food is rich and delicious.

*¿Qué comida se prepara para los turistas?*

What food is prepared for the tourists?

*Preparan comidas auténticas para los turistas. -*

They prepare authentic food for tourists.

*¿Qué bebidas me gusta probar?*

What drinks do I like to try?

*Me gusta probar bebidas tradicionales. -*

I like to try traditional drinks.

*¿Qué deseo hacer?*

What do I wish to do?

*Deseo visitar todos los países del mundo. -*

I wish to visit all of the countries in the world.

## Vocabulario/Vocabulary

- *Viajar es una experiencia* --- Traveling is an experience
- *maravillosa* --- Experience
- *auténtica* --- authentic
- *deseo* --- wish/want
- *exóticos* --- exotic
- *fascinante* --- fascinating
- *fotografía* --- photograph/picture
- *maravillosa* --- wonderful
- *naturaleza* --- nature
- *probar* --- try
- *saludan* --- greet
- *tesoro* --- treasure

## 2. La Mejor Cita – The Best Date

*Samantha era una joven chica de 23 años que estudiaba ingeniería mecánica, era muy hermosa, entre las tres chicas que estudiaban ingeniería mecánica, ella era la más hermosa, por lo que, los chicos solo se fijaban en ella. Ella estaba harta de que los patanes y todos los chicos siempre intentaran tener algo con ella. Un día, en la fiesta del cumpleaños del novio de Becky, su mejor amiga; Samantha estaba siendo abordada por todos los chicos de la fiesta, cuando llegó un chico muy guapo al que ella había visto durante un rato y le dijo que no podía evitar verla, Samantha, pensando que era uno del montón, lo rechazó inmediatamente, pero él le dijo que era porque tenía un moco en la cara. Samantha, súper apenada, le pregunto que, si era en serio, y que en donde lo tenía, pero era una broma de él para que ella bajara la guardia. Su nombre era Bruce. Era muy chistoso y simpático, por lo que a Samantha le agradó y estuvieron hablando el resto de la fiesta. Bruce se fue y Samantha no le dio ni le pidió su número, pues temía que pensara que era una chica fácil.*

Samantha was a young girl of 23 years who studied mechanical engineering. She was very beautiful. Among the three girls who studied mechanical engineering, she was the most beautiful, so the boys only noticed her. She was sick and tired of the louts and all the boys that always trying to have something with her. One day, at the birthday party of Becky's boyfriend, her best friend, Samantha was approached by all the boys at the party. When a very handsome boy arrived and told her he couldn't avoid seeing her. Samantha, thinking he was one of the bunch, immediately rejected him, but he told her it was because she (had) a snot on her face. Samantha, super embarrassed, asked him if he was serious and that where she had it. However, it was just his joke so that she could let her guard down. His name was Bruce. He was very funny and friendly, so Samantha liked him and they talked for the rest of the party. Bruce left and Samantha didn't give her number or ask for his, because she was afraid that he thought she was an easy girl.

*Emocionada por el chico que conoció, Samantha le contó todo a Becky, quien le dijo que era una tonta por no haberle dado o pedido el número de él.*

Excited by the boy she met; Samantha told Becky everything, who said she was a fool for not giving or asking for his number.

*Días después recibió un mensaje de un número desconocido, bromeando sobre el moco. En seguida, Samantha supo que se trataba de Bruce y lo llamó, acordaron salir a comer y verse en el centro comercial.*

Days later, she received a message from an unknown number, joking about the snot. Samantha knew it was Bruce and called him. They agreed to go out to eat and meet at the mall.

*La cita fue maravillosa, y Bruce le dijo a Samantha su secreto, y también le dijo que le gustaba mucho, Samantha, se lanzó sobre él y lo besó agradeciéndole por ser la mejor cita que había tenido.*

The date was wonderful. Bruce told Samantha his secret and also told her that he liked her very much. Samantha, threw herself on him and kissed him, to thank him for being the best date she had ever had.

## Quiz

1. ¿Cuántos años tenía Samantha cuando estudió ingeniería mecánica?
  - a. No nos dicen
  - b. 32 años de edad
  - c. 23 años
  - d. 20 años
2. ¿Cuántas chicas estudiaron ingeniería mecánica con Samantha?
  - a. 23
  - b. 3
  - c. ninguna
  - d. 1
3. ¿Cómo se llamaba el niño que vino a ver a Samantha?
  - a. Becky
  - b. Brian
  - c. Bruce
  - d. No nos dicen
4. ¿Qué hicieron Samantha y Bruce en una cita?

- a. Caminado
- b. Besado
- c. Dormido
- d. Se rio

**Respuestas:**

- 1. c
- 2. b
- 3. c
- 4. b

**Vocabulario/Vocabulary**

- *Ingeniería* --- engineering
- *Mecánica* --- Mechanical
- *Carrera* – career
- *Pecas* --- freckles
- *Cachetes* --- cheeks
- *Sonrisa* --- smile
- *Delgada* --- thin
- *Locos* --- crazy
- *Salir* --- going out/date
- *Belleza* --- beauty
- *Varones* --- male
- *Hembras* --- female
- *Compañeros* --- classmates
- *ingeniería electronica* --- electronic engineering
- *ingeniería química* --- chemical engineering
- *novio* --- boyfriend
- *fiesta* --- party

- *guapo* --- handsome
- *bailar* --- dancing
- *rechazar* --- to refuse
- *miradas* --- glances
- *moco* --- snot
- *nariz* --- nose
- *bromeando* --- joking
- *bajar la guardia* --- lowering guard
- *cansada* --- tired
- *bien jugado* --- well played
- *creído* --- arrogant
- *foto* --- photo
- *chistoso* --- funny
- *contenta* --- happy
- *amable* --- friendly
- *gracioso* --- funny
- *despedirse* --- said goodbye
- *desconocido* --- unknown
- *ocupada* --- busy
- *maquillarse* --- make-up



### 3. El Lado Malo De Los Pasatiempos

*Los pasatiempos son las diferentes actividades que hacemos para gastar tiempo o para recrearnos y relajarnos. Los pasatiempos pueden ser casi cualquier cosa, siempre y cuando sea diferente a las actividades diarias. Durante mi tiempo libre, a mí me gusta practicar futbol, también tengo el pasatiempo de leer ciencia ficción y tocar guitarra. Mi compañero de apartamento, tiene el pasatiempo del origami, él siempre dobla papel y crea diversos animales y formas, hoy quiere hacer muchas aves. Mi compañero dedica muchas horas todos los fines de semana a su pasatiempo, y creo yo, él es cada día mejor en el arte del origami. Yo me preocupo por mis pasatiempos, debido a que en ocasiones me distraigo tanto que me pasa el tiempo volando, y cuando me doy cuenta, debo apurarme con mis otras actividades, o incluso a veces las olvido por completo.*

The hobbies are different activities we do to spend time recreationally and to relax. Hobbies can be almost anything, as long as it is different from daily activities. During my free time, I like to play soccer; I also have the hobby of reading science fiction and playing guitar. My roommate has origami as his hobby; he always folds paper and creates different animals and forms. Today he wants to make many birds. My roommate devotes many hours every weekend to his hobby. I believe that he is getting better every day in the origami art. I worry about my hobbies because sometimes I get distracted too much, that I see my time flying when I realize it, I hurry with my other activities, or even sometimes I completely forget them.

*Lo malo de los pasatiempos, es que como su nombre lo indica, consumen mucho tiempo, y si no se pone mucha atención a las horas que se gasta practicándolos, Tú puedes desperdiciar días enteros, y dejar de hacer las tareas u obligaciones que son realmente importantes, y que nos traen beneficios. Los pasatiempos deben ser manejados como los vicios, con cuidado y de a poquito, para evitar crear problemas.*

The bad thing about hobbies is that as the name implies, they consume a lot of time, if you do not pay much attention to track the hours spent practicing

them. You can waste days, and stop doing the tasks or obligations that really matter and bring you benefits. Hobbies should be handled like vices, carefully and you should must spend a little time, to avoid creating problems.

*Por supuesto, todos necesitamos actividades de esparcimiento y recreación, y los pasatiempos permiten relajarnos, y divertirnos. Pero se tiene que ser muy precavido con la cantidad de horas que le dedicamos a estos. Ellos son muy entretenidos, captan toda nuestra atención y nos hacen olvidar las tareas importantes y nuestras obligaciones. En mi opinión, los peores pasatiempos son los video juegos, debido a la gran estimulación que proporcionan. Siempre ocasionan que se descuiden las obligaciones en las personas distraídas o susceptibles de ser fanáticas de ellos.*

Of course, we all need activities for recreation and leisure. Hobbies allow us to relax and have fun, but we have to be very careful with the number of hours we dedicate to them. They are very entertaining, they capture our full attention, and they make us forget the important tasks and our duties. In my opinion, the worst hobbies are video games, due to the high stimulation they provide. They always cause negligence in the obligations of people who are easily distracted or are likely to be fanatics of them.

## **Quiz**

1. A la persona le gusta hacer los siguientes pasatiempos, excepto uno. ¿Cuál es?
  - a. Tocando la batería
  - b. leyendo ciencia ficción
  - c. tocar la guitarra
  - d. jugando futbol
2. ¿Por qué los pasatiempos deben manejarse como vicios?
  - a. para evitar crear problemas
  - b. No son buenos
  - c. Conducen a tentaciones
  - d. Son peligrosos
3. ¿Cuál es el hobby del compañeros de cuarto?
  - a. leyendo ciencia ficción

- b. tocar la guitarra
- c. jugando futbol
- d. origami

4. ¿Por qué compartimos pasatiempos?

- a. como trabajo
- b. Para mantenernos ocupados
- c. Para recreación
- d. Como una actividad diaria

### **Vocabulary / Vocabulario**

- Hobby --- *Pasatiempo*
- Waste time --- *Gastar tiempo*
- Leisure --- *Ocio (Esparcimiento)*
- Recreation --- *recreación*
- Relax --- *Relajarnos*
- Free time --- *Tiempo libre*
- Distract --- *Distraer*
- Pay attention --- *Poner atención*
- (To) practice --- *Practicar-*

## 4. Quedarse En Casa

*Era domingo en la tarde. Alejandro no tenía ningún plan en particular, por lo que se permitió recuperar el sueño que había perdido durante la semana. Sin embargo, no sería un día de ocio total, ya que tenía que hacer varias tareas domésticas.*

It was a Sunday afternoon. Alejandro had no particular plans, so he fell asleep and allowed himself to catch up on sleep he had missed during the week. However, it would not be a completely lazy day, as he had to do several housework

*Quizás lo más importante de todo eran las facturas no pagadas que debía revisar. La vivienda no es gratis después de todo. El alquiler, la electricidad, el agua, internet, los préstamos estudiantiles y los planes de teléfono tenían pagos vencidos. Sin embargo, gracias a la tecnología, todo esto se puede pagar en línea sin salir de casa.*

Perhaps most important of all were the unpaid bills that needed to be taken care of. Housing isn't free, after all. Rent, electricity, water, internet, student loans, and phone plans all have overdue payments. Thanks to technology, all of these can be paid online without leaving home.

*Luego, la ropa se había acumulado durante la semana y algunos lavados serían necesarios para la próxima semana. Él nunca se molestaba en clasificar su ropa en blanca, oscura y de colores, así que en lugar de eso solo ponía la mayor cantidad de carga posible, vertía un poco de detergente para la ropa, suavizante de telas y ponía a funcionar la lavadora.*

Next, the laundry had piled up over) the week, and a few loads would be necessary for the upcoming week. He never bothered to sort his clothes into whites, darks, and colors; instead, he would just throw as much as he could in each load, pour in some laundry detergent and fabric softener, and run the laundry machine.

*Mientras esperaba que cada carga de ropa terminara, pensó que se mantendría productivo lavando los platos y aspirando la casa. La casa de Alejandro de ninguna manera estaba impecable, pero él hacía un poco*

*cada semana para mantenerla presentable. Para esta semana, haría algo de trabajo extra en la cocina. Limpió la nevera tirando los alimentos vencidos. También frotó los mostradores con desinfectante y retiró todas las migajas de comida del piso. Y terminó barriendo el suelo con su escoba y su recogedor. La limpieza podría esperar otro fin de semana, pensó.*

While he waited for each load to finish, he figured he would stay productive; washing the dishes and vacuuming the house. Alejandro's house was not impeccable at all, but he did just a little bit each week to maintain what he could. This week, he would do some extra work in the kitchen. He cleaned out the fridge by throwing away expired foods. He also scrubbed the counters with disinfectant and threw all the crumbs of food on the floor. And he finished by sweeping the floor with his broom and dustpan. Mopping could wait another week, he thought.

*Alejandro estaba más interesado en pasar el resto de su día en la computadora jugando videojuegos. Era fanático de los juegos de estrategia y podía pasar horas creando nuevas estrategias para probar contra sus amigos en línea e incluso en juegos de un solo jugador. Cuando necesitaba un descanso, de vez en cuando se levantaba para estirarse rápidamente, miraba por las ventanas, calentaba algo de comida en el microondas y se sentaba de nuevo para seguir jugando.*

Alejandro was more interested in spending the rest of his day at the computer playing video games. He was a fan of strategy games and could spend hours devising new strategies to try out against his friends online and even in single player games. When he needed a break, he would occasionally get up for a quick stretch, looked out the windows, heated some food in the microwave, and sat down for more gaming.

*Después de pasar demasiadas horas frente a la computadora, se produjo una pequeña crisis existencial. ¿Fue realmente sabio pasar tanto tiempo jugando cuando podría haber hecho algo más significativo? Claro, había videos que podía ver en línea, ¿pero eso sería diferente? Entonces, recogió los auriculares en su habitación y comenzó a escuchar algunos de los audiolibros que le recomendó Sofía.*

After spending too many hours in front of the computer, a small existential crisis would occur. Was it really all that wise to spend so much time gaming

when it could be used for something more meaningful? Sure, there were videos he could watch online, but would that be any different? And so, he picked up the headphones in his bedroom and started to listen to some of the audiobook recommended to him by Sofía.

*Al escuchar el libro, al instante sintió que estaba haciendo lo correcto con su tiempo e incluso tuvo la oportunidad de reflexionar un poco. Mientras seguía escuchando, vagaba por la casa. Abrió y cerró las puertas de su armario sin ninguna razón en particular. Puso su mano en el sofá y dejó que se deslizara mientras caminaba. No había mesa en el comedor para repetir esta acción, ya que vivía solo y acostumbraba a comer en la cocina o en el balcón.*

Listening to the book instantly the correct use of his time and even opened up the opportunity to reflect a bit. While he kept listening, he wandered around his house. He opened and closed his closet doors for no particular reason. He put his hand on the couch and let it glide over as he walked across. There was no dining room table to repeat this action, as he lived by himself and usually ate in the kitchen or out on the balcony.

*Antes de que se diera cuenta, eran las 10:00 pm. Era hora de acostarse. Si bien no terminó el audiolibro, ciertamente tenía algo nuevo de lo cual hablar el próximo fin de semana cuando fuera a una reunión familiar. Incluso podría llevar a Sofía y presentarla como la persona que le habló del libro.*

Before he knew it, it was 10:00 pm. It was time for bed. While he didn't finish the audiobook, he certainly had something new to talk about next weekend when he would go to the family reunion. He could even bring Sofía and introduce her as the one who introduced him to the book.

### **Comprehension Questions**

1. Si alguien necesita dormir, significa que...
  - a) ha estado durmiendo demasiado.
  - b) ha estado durmiendo muy poco.
  - c) le gusta dormir.
  - d) tiene problemas para conciliar el sueño.

2. ¿Cuál de los siguientes no se considera un servicio público para una vivienda?

- a) Préstamos estudiantiles
- b) Agua
- c) Electricidad
- d) Internet

3. Al limpiar la cocina, Alejandro no...

- a) frotó la encimera con desinfectante.
- b) tiró los alimentos vencidos.
- c) trapeó el piso.
- d) barrió el piso con su escoba y recogedor.

4. ¿Cuál es generalmente la forma más rápida de cocinar los alimentos?

- a) En la estufa
- b) En el microondas
- c) En el horno
- d) En el horno tostador

5. ¿Dónde encontró Alejandro sus auriculares?

- a) En su habitación
- b) En su armario
- c) En la lavadora
- d) En la sala de estar

**Answers:**

- 1. B
- 2. A
- 3. C
- 4. A
- 5. A

**Vocabulario/Vocabulary**

- *quedarse en casa* --- to stay at home
- *domingo en la tarde* --- Sunday afternoon

- *recuperar el sueño* --- to catch up on sleep
- *tareas domésticas* --- housework
- *facturas sin pagar* --- unpaid bills
- *vivienda* --- housing
- *alquiler* --- rent
- *electricidad* --- electricity
- *internet* --- internet
- *préstamos estudiantiles* --- student loans
- *planes de teléfono* --- phone plans
- *tener un pago vencido* --- to have a payment due
- *tecnología* --- technology
- *pagar en línea* --- to pay online
- *salir de casa* --- to leave the house
- *acumular* --- to accumulate, to pile up
- *ropa* --- clothes
- *clasificar* --- to sort
- *verter* --- to pour
- *detergente* --- detergent
- *suavizante de tela* --- fabric softener
- *funcionar* --- to work, to function
- *lavadora* --- laundry machine
- *una carga de ropa* --- a load of laundry
- *productivo* --- productive
- *lavando los platos* --- washing the dishes
- *aspirando la casa* --- vacuuming the house
- *impecable* --- spotless
- *trabajo extra* --- extra work
- *cocina* --- kitchen



- *limpiar la nevera* --- to clean out the fridge
- *tirar* --- to throw (away)
- *alimentos vencidos* --- expired food
- *frotar los mostradores* --- to scrub the counters
- *desinfectante* --- disinfectant
- *retirar* --- to remove
- *migajas de comida* --- food crumbs
- *piso* --- floor
- *suelo* --- floor
- *barrer el suelo* --- to sweep the floor
- *escoba y recogedor* --- broom and dustpan
- *limpieza* --- cleanliness
- *el resto del día* --- the rest of the day
- *computador* --- computer
- *juegos de estrategia* --- strategy games
- *juegos en solitario* --- single player games
- *estirarse* --- to stretch
- *mirar por las ventanas* --- to peer out the windows
- *calentar* --- to heat up
- *crisis existencial* --- existential crisis
- *sabio* --- wise
- *significativo* --- meaningful
- *videos* --- videos
- *ver en línea* --- to watch online
- *auriculares* --- headphones
- *habitación* --- bedroom
- *al instante* --- instantly
- *El uso correcto de su tiempo* – the correct use of his time

- *tener la oportunidad* --- to have the opportunity
- *reflexionar* --- to reflect (on)
- *vagar* --- to wander (around)
- *puertas de los armarios* --- closet doors
- *sin ninguna razón* --- for no reason
- *sofá* --- couch/sofa
- *deslizarse* --- to glide
- *mesa de comedor* --- dining room table
- *vivir solo* --- to live by oneself
- *balcón* --- balcony
- *hora de acostarse* --- bedtime
- *ciertamente* --- certainly
- *reunión familiar* --- family gathering
- *presentar* --- to introduce

## 5. De Viaje

*Viernes, 19 de diciembre*

Friday, December 19

*Hoy empiezan las vacaciones de Navidad. Mis padres, mis hermanos y yo volvemos a España durante las fiestas para ver a la familia. Por la tarde hacemos las maletas, tomamos un taxi y vamos al aeropuerto.*

Today the Christmas holidays begin. My parents, my brothers and I return to Spain during the holidays to see the family. In the afternoon we pack our bags, take a taxi and go to the airport.

— *¿A dónde desean ir? –pregunta el taxista.*

“Where would you like to go?” asks the taxi driver.

— *Al aeropuerto de JFK, por favor. —contesta mi padre.*

“To JFK airport, please.” answers my father.

*Cuando llegamos al aeropuerto, entregué mi boleto en el mostrador y mostré mi pasaporte a una azafata. Después nos dan las tarjetas de embarque y nos indican dónde podemos esperar. Nos sentamos en una cafetería a ver despegar los aviones y a tomar un chocolate caliente. Echo de menos a Luciano.*

When we arrive at the airport, I handed my ticket the counter and showed my passport to a flight attendant. Then they give us the boarding passes and tell us where we can wait. We sat in a cafeteria to watch the planes take off and have a hot chocolate. I miss Luciano.

*De pronto veo un gato gris que corre por la pista, entre los aviones. ¡Es Micifuz, el gato del director del colegio! Una pista de aterrizaje es un lugar peligroso para un gato, y me siento preocupado.*

Suddenly I see a gray cat running along the runway, between the planes. It's Micifuz, the school principal's cat! A runway is a dangerous place for a cat, and I feel worried.

*Un avión se acerca al gato por la pista. ¡Ese avión va muy rápido! Pero entonces aparece Luciano y salva al gato en el último minuto. Luciano corre detrás del gato gris para ayudarlo a escapar. Yo lo veo todo desde el cristal, pero mamá está en el baño y no ve nada.*

An airplane approaches the cat on the runway. That plane is going very fast! But then Luciano appears and saves the cat at the last minute. Luciano runs after the gray cat to help him escape. I see everything from the window glass, but mom is in the bathroom and she sees nothing.

— *¡Luciano! ¡Luciano! —grito por la ventana, pero Luciano no me oye. Luciano y el gato desaparecen al final de la pista.*

“Luciano! Luciano!” I scream out the window, but Luciano does not hear me. Luciano and the cat disappear at the end of the track.

— *Es hora de embarcar, —dice mi madre, y me estira del brazo.*

“It's time to board”, says my mother, and she pulls at my arm.

— *No puedo subir al avión, mamá, mi duende Luciano está en la pista, con el gato del director.*

*Mi madre se ríe. Ella piensa que es una broma.*

“I can't get on the plane, mom, my elf Luciano is on the runway, with the principal's cat.”

My mother laughs. She thinks it's a joke.

— *¿Tu amigo imaginario? Da igual, puedes jugar con él otro día.*

“Your imaginary friend? It doesn't matter, you will be able to play with him some other day.”

— *Pero mamá...*

“But mom...”

— *Puedes leer un libro en el avión o pintar con tus lápices de colores, ¿de acuerdo? —dice mamá, y subimos al avión.*

“You can read a book on the plane or color with your crayons, okay?” says mom, and we get on the plane.

*En el avión me parece oír los cascabeles del gorro de Luciano, pero no lo veo en ningún sitio. Creo que es sólo mi imaginación.*

On the plane I think I hear Luciano's hat bells, but I don't see him anywhere. I think it's just my imagination.

## Expresiones útiles/Useful expressions

¿A dónde vamos? - Where are we going to?

¿Dónde está el aeropuerto? - Where is the airport?

¿Cómo se va a la estación? - How can I get to the station?

¿A qué distancia está la playa? - How far is the beach?

He perdido el pasaporte/las llaves/la cartera - I have lost my passport/my keys/my wallet.

cerca/lejos - near/far

rápido/lento - fast/slow

aquí - here

ahí, allí - there (depending on whether it's nearer or farther away)

Esperar - to wait

Hacer cola - to queue

Facturar las maletas - to check your baggage.

Llamar - to call

Última llamada - last call

Oficina de objetos perdidos - lost property office

La dirección - address

Echar de menos (algo/a alguien) - to miss (something/someone)

Da igual - it doesn't matter

## Quiz

1) ¿A dónde va la familia de Valeria en Navidad?

- a) A Nueva York.
- b) A Venecia.
- c) A España.

2) ¿Qué medios de transporte usan para viajar?

- a) Autobús y avión.
- b) Taxi y barco.
- c) Taxi y avión.

3) ¿Qué hacen Luciano y el gato en el aeropuerto?

- a) Corren por el mostrador de facturación.
- b) Toman chocolate caliente con Valeria.
- c) Corren por la pista de aterrizaje.

- 4) ¿Luciano salva al gato de los aviones?
- a) No, y el gato tiene un accidente con un avión.
  - b) Sí, Luciano corre y saca al gato de la pista.
  - c) No, y el gato se mete en una maleta.
- 5) ¿Puede Valeria hablar con Luciano?
- a) Sí, suben juntos al avión.
  - b) No, su madre dice que es hora de irse.
  - c) Sí, hablan en la cafetería.

### **Answers**

- 1. c
- 2. c
- 3. c
- 4. b
- 5. b

## Vocabulario (Vocabulary)

- *Viajar* --- To travel
- *Las vacaciones* --- holidays
- *La maleta de viaje* --- suitcase
- *Hacer las maletas* --- to pack your luggage
- *El taxi* --- taxi
- *El autobús* --- bus
- *La parada de autobús* --- bus stop
- *El tren* --- train
- *El coche* --- car
- *La estación (de autobuses, de tren)* --- (bus, train) station
- *El avión* --- plane
- *El aeropuerto* --- airport
- *El boleto de avión* --- plane ticket
- *El pasaporte* --- Passport
- *La azafata* --- flight attendant
- *El mostrador de facturación* --- the check-in counter
- *Pista de despegue / aterrizaje* --- take-off runway/landing strip
- *Despegar* --- to take-off
- *Aterrizar* --- to land
- *El destino* --- destination
- *El retraso* --- delay



## 6. El Huevo Podrido

*Sara, Miguel, Mariano y Dulce eran mejores amigos desde primaria. Siempre habían sido compañeros de aventuras. Pero ahora que todos tenían vidas adultas (trabajos serios, hijos, deudas, electrodomésticos) rara vez encontraban tiempo para divertirse todos juntos. Ese sábado, iban a ir a una cabaña alejada del centro de la ciudad. Había sido idea de Mariano. “Es una casita muy rústica”, le había dicho el dueño por teléfono “Ideal para pasar el día”. Era invierno y había mucha nieve en el sur de Chile.*

Sara, Miguel, Mariano and Dulce were best friends since primary school. They had always been adventure partners. But now that they all had adult lives (serious jobs, children, debts, home appliances), they rarely found the time to have fun all together. That Saturday, they were going to a cabin removed from the city center. It had been Mariano’s idea. “It’s a very rustic little house”, the owner had told him on the phone. “It is ideal to spend the day”. It was winter and there was a lot of snow in the south of Chile.

*—¡Es hermosa! —dijo Sara cuando la vio desde el coche. Un verdadero sueño —añadió Miguel. Se ve muy hogareña —comentó Sara. Os lo dije —contestó Mariano. Entraron con sus provisiones para pasar el día - comida, bebida, juegos de mesa, revistas, libros y más.*

—It’s beautiful! —said Sara when she saw it from the car. A true dream —added Miguel. It looks very homey —Sara commented. I told you so —Mariano replied. They went in with their supplies to spend the day - food, drinks, board games, magazines, books and more.

*—Está completamente amueblada —dijo Sara cuando abrió la puerta y pasó al interior. Y muy calentita. Parece que los dueños han pasado para encender la estufa —dijo Miguel. Parece que también nos han dejado comida —dijo Dulce, señalando una canasta donde había varios paquetes de pasta, galletas, frascos de mermelada y huevos. Fue una gran idea venir —dijo Mariano—. Mi idea...*

—It’s completely furnished —Sara said when she opened the door and stepped inside. And very warm. It seems the owners have stopped by to turn the stove on —said Miguel. It seems they have left us some food as well —

said Dulce, pointing to a basket with many packages of pasta, biscuits, jam jars and eggs. It was a great idea to come —said Mariano—. My idea...

*Los amigos se quitaron los abrigos y se pusieron cómodos en la cabaña. Pusieron más leña en la estufa, pusieron música, abrieron una botella de vino y se prepararon para relajarse. ¿Queréis que prepare el desayuno? —preguntó Dulce. Miró su reloj—. Más bien será un almuerzo a esta hora. Me parece excelente —dijo Miguel. Señaló los huevos de la canasta y añadió— - ¿Qué tal unas tortillas?*

The group of friends took off their coats and got comfortable inside the cottage. They put more wood into the stove, put on some music, opened a bottle of wine and got ready to relax. Do you want me to prepare lunch? —asked Dulce. She looked at her watch—. It will be more like a brunch at this time. It sounds excellent to me —said Miguel. He pointed to the eggs in the basket and added— - How about some omelettes?

*Dulce buscó una sartén y varios ingredientes más, como sal y queso, entre las provisiones que habían llevado. Encontró un cuenco para batir los huevos y una batidora. Entonces, cuando partió el primer huevo, notó que algo verdoso asomaba del interior. ¡El huevo estaba completamente podrido! En solo un segundo, el olor llegó a su nariz. ¡Era lo peor que había olido en su vida!*

Dulce looked for a pan and some other ingredients, like salt and cheese, among the supplies they had brought. She found a bowl to beat the eggs and a beater. Then, when she broke the first egg, she noticed something green poking out from the inside. The egg was completely rotten! In just a second, the smell reached her nose. It was the worst thing she had smelled in her life!

*—TODOS FUERA, ¡DE INMEDIATO! —gritó. Los amigos corrieron al exterior de la cabaña tras ella. ¿Qué pasa? ¿se prendió fuego a algo? —preguntó Sara. ¿Hay un asesino en serie en la cabaña? —preguntó jocosamente Mariano. No... —dijo Dulce—. ¡Los huevos estaban podridos! ¡Ay, no! —exclamó Miguel. Vamos, no será para tanto —dijo Sara. Miguel se rio y le dijo -*

*¿Entonces por qué no entras y nos dices?*

EVERYBODY OUT, IMMEDIATELY! —she screamed. The group of friends run to the exterior of the cabin behind her. What happens? Did something set on fire? —Sara asked. Is there a serial killer in the cabin? —Mariano asked jokingly. No... —Dulce said—. The eggs were rotten! Oh, no! —Miguel exclaimed. Come on, it can't be that bad —Sara said. Miguel laughed and said to her -

Then why don't you go in and tell us?

*Sara aceptó el desafío y entró en la cabaña. A los tres segundos, salió cubriéndose la boca con la mano. Sus tres amigos se rieron. Bueno, igual vamos a tener que entrar... —dijo Miguel. Sí. Alguien tiene que sacar el huevo antes de que toda la casa se llene con esa peste. Mariano fue quien se atrevió a entrar. Se cubrió la nariz y la boca con el pañuelo que llevaba en el cuello.*

Sara accepted the challenge and went into the cabin. Three seconds later, she came out covering her mouth with her hand. Her three friends laughed. Well, we will still have to go in... —Miguel said. Yes. Someone will have to take the egg out before the whole house fills up with that pestilence. Mariano was the one who dared to go in. He covered his nose and mouth with his neckerchief.

*A los pocos segundos, salió corriendo con el cuenco que contenía el huevo podrido y lo vació detrás de un árbol. ¡Qué horror! —dijo—. Incluso con el pañuelo, ha sido lo más horrible que he oído en mi vida. Ahora alguien tiene que entrar a abrir las ventanas para que se ventile el lugar. Yo no pienso entrar de nuevo... Puedo llegar a morir. La siguiente en animarse a entrar en la casa fue Dulce. Los amigos vieron cómo las ventanas se abrían desde el interior una a una. Cuando salió, aspiró una gran bocanada de aire. o me he atrevido a respirar en todo el tiempo que he estado dentro —dijo, agitada.*

A few seconds later, he came out running with the bowl that contained the rotten egg and emptied it behind a tree. How awful! —he said—. Even with the neckerchief on, it was the most horrible thing I smelt in my whole life. Now someone has to go in and open the windows to air the place. I don't plan to go in again... I could die. The next one to dare to go in was Dulce. The group of friends saw how the windows were opened from the inside

one by one. When she came out she inhaled deeply. I didn't dare to breathe the whole time I was inside —she said, agitated.

*Será mejor que entre a buscar nuestras cosas, porque puede que estemos aquí fuera bastante rato —dijo Miguel. Al cabo de unos minutos, tenían sus abrigos, los juegos de mesa y el vino con ellos. Dulce puso un mantel en el suelo y se sentaron allí, sobre la nieve. Pasaron un largo rato jugando al dominó. Después, como no podían entrar a cocinar el almuerzo, comieron galletas, patatas fritas, nueces, almendras y chocolatinas.*

It will be better if I go in to get our things, because we might be out here for a while —Miguel said. A few minutes later, they had their coats, the board games and the wine with them. Dulce set a tablecloth on the floor and they sat there, on the snow. They spent a long while playing domino. Later, since they couldn't go in to cook lunch, they had biscuits, fries, nuts, almonds and chocolates.

*Enfadado por perder al dominó, Mariano arrojó una bola de nieve a Miguel. Así comenzó una batalla de bolas de nieve que duró media hora. Armaron dos equipos. Miguel estaba con Dulce y Mariano con Sara. Cuando terminó, se sentaron con una nueva botella de vino a charlar y disfrutar de la tranquilidad de la tarde.*

Angry after losing a domino battle, Mariano threw a snowball to Miguel. That's how a snowball battle that lasted half an hour started. They made two teams. Miguel was with Dulce and Mariano with Sara. When it finished, they sat with a new bottle of wine to chat and enjoy the tranquility of the afternoon.

*Ya no hay olor en la casa —anunció Dulce, que había entrado a la cabaña para usar el baño. Los amigos se miraron. Creo que estoy pasando un buen rato aquí afuera de todas formas —dijo Sara—. Hay tanta naturaleza... Sí, creo que todos estamos mejor aquí —dijo Miguel—, ¿no es así?*

The house doesn't smell anymore —Dulce announced. She had gone into the cabin to use the toilet. The friends looked at each other. I think I'm having a good time out here anyway —Sara said—. There is so much nature... Yes, I think we all are better here —Miguel said—, isn't that so?

*Los otros asintieron. Se quedaron el resto de la tarde en la nieve. Al anochecer, llegó un gran automóvil gris. Era el dueño de la casa. Cuando le contaron lo sucedido, soltó una gran carcajada. En esa cesta siempre dejó la comida que dejan los huéspedes. No me di cuenta de que los huevos ya podrían haberse puesto malos... Lo lamento mucho. No se disculpe, señor. Ha sido lo mejor que nos podía pasar.*

The others nodded. They stayed for the rest of the afternoon on the snow. At sunset, a big grey car arrived. It was the owner of the house. When they told him what happened, he laughed. I always put into that basket the food that the guests leave behind. I didn't realize the eggs might be bad... I'm very sorry. Don't apologies, sir. It's been the best that could happen to us.

## Quiz

1. Sara tenía 3 amigos, ¿quién no estaba entre sus amigos?
  - a. Michael
  - b. Miguel
  - c. Mariano
  - d. Dulce
2. ¿Cuál es el nombre de la ciudad que tenía mucha nieve?
  - a. Chile
  - b. Nueva York
  - c. Francia
3. Sara y sus amigas eran?
  - a. Compañeros de clase
  - b. Compañeros de trabajo
  - c. Compañeros de aventura
4. ¿Qué hizo Mariano después de perder una batalla de dominó?
  - a. Golpear la ventana
  - b. Llorar
  - c. arrojó una bola de nieve
5. ¿De qué color era el auto que llegó al atardecer?
  - a. Blanco
  - b. Azul
  - c. Gris
6. ¿De dónde se conocen todos?
  - a. Del instituto.
  - b. De la universidad.
  - c. De primaria.
7. ¿De quién fue la idea de ir ahí?
  - a. De Mariano.
  - b. Del dueño.
  - c. De Dulce.
8. ¿Qué llevaron con ellos?
9. ¿Cómo es el clima?

- a. Nevado.
- b. Lluvioso.
- c. Cálido.

10. ¿Qué encuentran dentro de una cesta?

11. ¿Qué quiere preparar Dulce para el almuerzo?

12. ¿Qué consigue para empezar a cocinar?

- a. Una sartén y sal.
- b. Una sartén, sal, queso y huevos.
- c. Un huevo podrido.

13. ¿Qué hace después de ver que el huevo está podrido?

- a. Incendia algo.
- b. Ve un asesino en serie.
- c. Les dice a todos que salgan.

14. ¿Quién entra en la cabaña después de salir?

15. ¿Se les arruinó el día?

1. Sara had 3-friends, who wasn't among her friends?

- a. Michael
- b. Miguel
- c. Mariano
- d. Dulce

2. What is the name of the city that had a lot of snow?

- a. Chile
- b. New York
- c. France

3. Sara and her friends were?

- a. Classmates
- b. Workmates
- c. Adventure partners

4. What did Mariano do after losing a domino battle?

- a. Hit the window
- b. Cried

c. threw a snowball

5. What was the color of the car that arrived at sunset?

a. White

b. Blue

c. Grey

6. Where did they all know each other from?

a. Secondary school.

b. College.

c. Primary school.

7. Who's idea was it to go there?

a. Mariano's.

b. The owner's.

c. Dulce's.

8. What did they take with them?

9. How is the weather?

a. Snowy.

b. Rainy.

c. Warm.

10. What do they find inside a basket?

11. What does Dulce want to prepare for brunch?

12. What does she get to start cooking?

a. A pan and some salt.

b. A pan, salt, cheese and eggs.

c. A rotten egg.

13. What does she do after she sees the egg is rotten?

a. She sets something on fire.

b. She sees a serial killer.

c. She orders everybody out.

14. Who goes into the cabin after they have to go out?

15. Is their day ruined?



## Respuestas

1. *a*
2. *a*
3. *c*
4. *c*
5. *c*
6. *c*
7. *a*
8. *Comida, bebida, juegos de mesa, revistas y libros.*
9. *a*
10. *Varios paquetes de pasta, galletas, botes de mermelada y huevos.*
11. *Tortillas.*
12. *b*
13. *c*
14. *Todos deben entrar.*
15. *No, es lo mejor que les podría haber pasado.*

## Answers

1. *a*
2. *a*
3. *c*
4. *c*
5. *c*
6. *c*
7. *a*
8. *Food, drinks, board games, magazines and books.*
9. *a*
10. *Several packs of pasta, biscuits, jam jars and eggs.*
11. *Omelettes.*
12. *b*
13. *c*
14. *They all have to go in.*
15. *No, it's the best thing that could have happened to them.*

## Vocabulario (Vocabulary)

- Companions --- *Compañeros*
- Grown up --- *Adulto*
- Debts --- *Deudas*
- Home appliances --- *Electrodomésticos*
- Cabin --- *Cabaña*
- Rustic --- *Rústico*
- On the phone --- *Por teléfono*
- Winter --- *Invierno*
- Snow --- *Nieve*
- Supplies --- *Provisiones*
- Food --- *Comida*
- Drinks --- *Bebidas*
- Board games --- *Juegos de mesa*
- Furnished --- *Amueblada*
- Stove --- *Estufa*
- Coats --- *Abrigos*
- To get comfortable --- *Ponerse cómodo/a*
- Pan --- *Sartén*
- Salt --- *Sal*
- To break --- *Partir*
- To notice --- *Notar*
- Smell --- *Olor*
- To set something on fire --- *Prender fuego*
- To be that bad --- *Ser para tanto*
- Challenge --- *Desafío*
- To dare --- *Atreverse*
- In my life --- *En mi vida*

- To open the windows --- *Abrir las ventanas*
- To breath --- *Respirar*
- A long while --- *Bastante rato*
- A tablecloth --- *Un mantel*
- To cook lunch --- *Cocinar el almuerzo*
- A snowball --- *Una bola de nieve*
- To chat --- *Charlar*
- To enjoy --- *Disfrutar*
- Isn't that so? --- *¿No es así?*
- To nod --- *Asentir*
- Car --- *Automóvil*
- To go bad --- *Ponerse malo*
- Apologize --- *Disculparse*

## 7. Nuevos Amigos

*Ana está en la universidad. Es su primer día de clases. Estudia Derecho. Quiere convertirse en abogada penalista. Su sueño es investigar casos y defender a personas que no tienen recursos económicos.*

*Ana is in college. It is his first day of school. Studying Law, he wants to become a criminal lawyer. His dream is to investigate cases and defend people who do not have financial resources.*

*Está en un aula muy grande con otros estudiantes. Todos hablan entre ellos. Ana no conoce a nadie. Se siente un poco solitaria. Extraña a sus amigos del pueblo.*

*He is in a very large classroom with other students. Everyone talks to each other. Ana doesn't know anyone. It feels a little lonely. She misses her village friends.*

*Cuando entra el profesor, todos los estudiantes guardan silencio. El profesor empieza la clase. Habla muy rápido. Todos los estudiantes tienen bolígrafos y anotadores, y toman notas. Algunos toman notas en sus computadoras para tomar apuntes. Ana toma su mochila, la abre y saca un anotador y un bolígrafo. Quiere escribir la fecha y tomar notas, pero su bolígrafo no funciona. ¡Qué mala suerte! El profesor sigue hablando muy rápido y Ana no puede tomar notas. No sabe qué hacer.*

*When the teacher enters, all students remain silent. The teacher starts the class and speaks very fast. All students have pens and annotators, and take notes. Some use their computers to take notes. Ana takes her backpack, opens it and takes out a notebook and a pen. He wants to write the date and take notes, but his pen doesn't work. What a bad luck! The teacher keeps talking very fast and Ana can't take notes. He does not know what to do.*

*—¡Tchh! — dice alguien.*

*"Tchh!" Says someone.*

*Ana mira a su izquierda y ve a una chica rubia con un bolígrafo en la mano.*

*Ana looks to her left and sees a blonde girl with a pen in her hand.*

*—¿Quieres que te preste un bolígrafo? — pregunta la chica rubia.*

*"Do you want me to lend you a pen?" Asks the blonde girl.*

*—Sí, por favor. ¡Muchas gracias! — dice Ana.*

*-Yes please. Thank you very much! - says Ana.*

*Ana está muy contenta. Empieza a tomar notas. Cuando termina la clase, todos los estudiantes toman sus anotadores y bolígrafos y los guardan en sus mochilas. Ana llama a la chica que le prestó el bolígrafo.*

Ana is very happy. Start taking notes. When the class ends, all students take their notebooks and pens and store them in their backpacks. Ana calls the girl who lent her the pen.

*—Oye, muchas gracias por prestarme el bolígrafo— dice Ana.*

*"Hey, thank you very much for lending me the pen," says Ana.*

*—¡De nada! Soy Lucía Pérez, ¿eres nueva?*

*-You are welcome! I'm Lucía Pérez, are you new?*

*—Sí, es mi primer día. Me llamo Ana García.*

*"Yes, it is my first day." My name is Ana García.*

*—Voy a tomar un café. ¿Quieres venir a tomar un café conmigo?*

*-I'm going to drink a cup of coffee. Do you want to come for coffee with me?*

*—Sí, me encantaría, me gusta mucho tomar café, ¡gracias!*

*"Yes, I would love to, I really like having coffee, thank you!"*

*Ana y Lucía van a la cafetería de la universidad y compran café. Se sientan en el patio a tomarlo.*

Ana and Lucia go to the university cafeteria and buy coffee. They sit on the patio to take it.

*—¿Dónde vives? — pregunta Lucía*

"Where do you live?" Asks Lucia

—*Ahora, en Palermo. Antes vivía en un pueblo. ¿Y tú?*

—Now, in Palermo. I used to live in a town. And you?

—*Yo soy de Buenos Aires de toda la vida. Vivo en Almagro. ¿Conoces el barrio de Almagro?*

—I am from Buenos Aires of a lifetime. I live in Almagro. Do you know the neighborhood of Almagro?

—*No, no lo conozco todavía.*

"No, I don't know yet."

—*¿Te gusta Buenos Aires?*

"Do you like Buenos Aires?"

—*Sí, me gusta, pero extraño a mis amigos.*

"Yes, I like it, but I miss my friends."

—*Ay, sí, qué difícil. ¡Los amigos son muy importantes!*

"Oh yes, it's difficult." Friends are very important!

—*¿Tienes familia?*

-Do you have family?

—*Sí. Vivo con mi mamá porque mis padres están divorciados. Mi mamá tiene un nuevo marido y tengo una hermana pequeña.*

-Yes. I live with my mom because my parents are divorced. My mom has a new husband and I have a little sister.

—*Yo también tengo un hermano pequeño. Mis padres siguen juntos. Creo que se quieren mucho.*

"I also have a little brother." My parents are still together. I think they love each other very much.

—*Los míos no se querían nada. ¡Es mejor que estén divorciados!*

"Mine didn't want anything." It is better that they are divorced!

—¿Te gusta estudiar Derecho?

"Do you like studying law?"

—No sé aún. Me gustó mucho la clase, pero todavía no sé qué quiero hacer. ¿y Tú?

-I do not know yet. I really liked the class but I still don't know what I want to do. And you?

—A mí me encantó la clase. Me gusta mucho el derecho. Mi sueño es ser abogada penalista.

"I loved the class." I really like the right one. My dream is to be a criminal lawyer.

—Ah, como mi amigo Martín. Mira, ahí viene.

"Oh, like my friend Martin." Look, there he comes.

*Un chico alto y de cabello castaño se acerca a la mesa donde están Ana y Lucía.*

A tall boy with brown hair approaches the table where Ana and Lucia are.

—Hola, Lucía, ¿cómo estás? — dice el chico alto.

"Hello, Lucia, how are you?" Says the tall boy.

—Hola, Martín, esta es Ana, se acaba de mudar a Buenos Aires— dice Lucía.

—Hello, Martín, this is Ana, she has just moved to Buenos Aires - says Lucia.

—Hola, Ana, ¿cómo estás? — dice Martín.

"Hello, Ana, how are you?" Says Martin.

—Muy bien, gracias, ¿y tú? — pregunta Ana.

"Very well, thank you, and you?" Asks Ana.

—¡Cansado! Tuve muchas clases. ¿Y ustedes? — responde Martín.

-Tired! I had many classes. And you? - replies Martín.

—*Yo también estoy cansada. Por suerte ya terminaron nuestras clases de hoy— dice Lucía.*

-I am tired too. Luckily our classes are over today," says Lucia.

—*Lucía, ¿vienes a mi fiesta de cumpleaños el viernes? — pregunta Martín.*

"Lucia, are you coming to my birthday party on Friday?" Asks Martin.

—*Sí, claro.*

-Yeah right.

—*Ana, ¿quieres venir a mi fiesta de cumpleaños? Es en mi casa, en Palermo— dice Martín.*

"Ana, do you want to come to my birthday party?" It's in my house, in Palermo," says Martín.

—*Sí, me encantaría, yo también vivo en Palermo—, dice Ana, contenta.*

"Yes, I would love to, I also live in Palermo," says Ana, happy.

—*Genial. Nos vemos el viernes entonces.*

-Great. See you on Friday then.

—*¡Nos vemos! — dicen Lucía y Ana.*

"See you!" Lucia and Ana say.

*Ana no lo puede creer - tiene dos nuevos amigos y una invitación a una fiesta de cumpleaños. ¡Nada mal para el primer día de clases!*

Ana can't believe it - she has two new friends and an invitation to a birthday party. Not bad for the first day of school!

## **Reading Comprehension**

1. Do you remember your first day in school, in college or at work? What it was like? How did you feel? Think about how Ana feels. Is she happy in the beginning of the story?

2. Make a list (in Spanish, of course) of all the school supplies mentioned in the story. Did you use any of them at school to take notes?



3. With a partner, role-play the meeting between Lucía and Ana. Do it in Spanish, of course. Use their words and phrases!

## Quiz

Select only one of the options.

1. “Ana está en un aula.” What is the correct translation?

Ana is at school.

Ana is studying.

Ana is a classroom.

2. What is the grammatically correct sentence?

Los alumnos guarda silencio.

Los alumnos guardan silencio.

Los alumnos guardan silencio.

3. “Lucía es rubia.” What does this sentence mean?

Lucía is blonde

Lucía is tall

Lucía is red-haired

4. What is the correct translation of “Ana misses her friends?”

Ana quiere a sus amigos.

Ana extraña a sus amigos.

Ana no extraña a sus amigos.

5. Ana likes coffee. Is that true?

Yes

No

She prefers tea

6. Where does Lucía live?

In a small town

In Palermo

In Almagro

7. “Martín es amigo de Lucía.” What is the correct translation of that sentence?

Lucía is Martín’s friend.

Martín is Lucía's friend.

Lucía is not Martín's friend.

8. Martín says he is "cansado." What does that mean?

He is married.

He is bored.

He is tired.

9. When's the party?

El viernes

El martes

El sábado

10. Where does Martín live?

In the same neighborhood as Lucía

In the same neighborhood as Ana

Near university

11. How does Ana feel when Martín invites her to the party?

Triste

Cansada

Contenta

12. If Martín says "Te invito a mi fiesta," is he inviting one, two, or more persons to his party? You can use the dictionary or anything you need to answer this question.

One

Two

More than two

### **Answers:**

1. c

2. c

3. a

4. b

5. a

6. c

7. b

8. c

- 9. a
- 10. b
- 11. a

## **Vocabulario (Vocabulary)**

- *Universidad* – college/University
- *Convertirse* --- Become
- *Investigar* --- Research
- *Recursos* --- Means
- *Estudiantes* --- Students
- *Conocer* --- Known
- *Empieza* --- Starts
- *Algunos* --- Some
- *Bolígrafo* --- pen
- *Quiere* --- Wants
- *Puede* --- may
- *Anotadores* – notebooks

## 8. La Gran Noticia

*El 26 de septiembre era un día como cualquiera. Matías se levantaba a las 7 de la mañana, desayunaba y se iba al colegio. Últimamente había estado llegando tarde, ya que su mamá no podía llevarlo porque estaba embarazada y su papá trabajaba en la fábrica desde temprano. Matías debía tomar el autobús para llegar al colegio, y en esos viajes se había hecho un amigo, Kevin.*

September 26 was a day like any other. Matías got up at 7 in the morning, ate breakfast and went to school. Lately he had been late, since his mother could not take him because she was pregnant and his father worked at the factory early. Matías had to take the bus to get to school, and on those trips, he had become a friend to Kevin.

*Esa mañana, Matías saltó de la cama, tomó sus carpetas y salió corriendo a la parada de autobús. Allí lo estaba esperando Kevin y estrecharon las manos como de costumbre. Kevin estaba un poco molesto ese día, lo que le causaba un poco de disgusto a Matías, que le costaba soportar.*

That morning, Matías jumped out of bed, took his books and ran to the bus stop. Kevin was waiting for him there and they shook hands as usual. Kevin was a little upset that day, which caused Matías a bit of annoyance, which was hard to bear.

*Cuando llegó el autobús, subieron y ya estaban de camino a clase. Unas pocas cuadras antes de llegar, algo desafortunado sucedió. De casualidad, antes de doblar en una esquina, un camión cruzó rápidamente y causó un choque con otro auto. Matías y Kevin vieron la situación desde la ventana del autobús. El chofer bajó a ayudar a los conductores. Por suerte, los bomberos estaban de paso y se aseguraron de que no hubiera sucedido una desgracia. Ambos conductores se encontraban sanos, pero Kevin y Matías ya llegaban muy tarde, pero aún podían asistir a clase, por lo que bajaron del autobús y siguieron caminando.*

When the bus arrived, they got on and were already on their way to class. A few blocks before arriving, something unfortunate happened. By chance, before turning in a corner, a truck quickly crossed and caused a crash with

another car. Matías and Kevin saw the situation from the bus window. The driver went down to help the drivers. Luckily, firefighters were passing through and made sure that a misfortune had not happened. Both drivers were healthy, but Kevin and Matías were already late, but they could still attend class, so they got off the bus and kept walking.

*Una vez que llegaron, le explicaron lo que había sucedido a su maestra . La maestra entendió y se puso feliz de que no hubiera víctimas. Kevin y Matías fueron a sentarse en sus pupitres.*

Once they arrived, they explained what had happened to their teacher. The teacher understood and was happy that there were no victims. Kevin and Matías went to sit at their desks.

*Cuando Matías abrió su cartuchera, vio un mensaje escrito a mano que decía “Hoy recibirás una gran noticia. La luna dice que será tu mejor amiga”. Matías comenzó a preguntarse <<¿Qué tipo de noticia recibiré hoy?>>*

When Matías opened his holster, he saw a handwritten message that said “Today you will receive great news. The moon says she will be your best friend.” Matías began to wonder <<What kind of news will I receive today? >>

*A Matías lo agobiaban las dudas, entonces les preguntó a sus amigos. Kevin era un poco escéptico, le dijo que quizás solo era una broma. María era un poco celosa, le dijo que él ya tenía una mejor amiga y que era ella y nadie más. Juliana era más pragmática, le dijo que la luna no hablaba. Lucas era muy pesimista, le dijo que podría ser una mala noticia .*

Matthias was overwhelmed by doubts, so he asked his friends. Kevin was a bit skeptical, he said maybe it was just a joke. Maria was a little jealous, she told him that he already had a best friend and that she and no one else. Juliana was more pragmatic, she told him that the moon did not speak. Lucas was very pessimistic, he said it could be bad news.

*Matías estaba lleno de curiosidad. De camino a su casa, solo pensaba en la nota. Miraba a la luna e intentaba hablar con ella. Si bien no escuchaba nada, había algo que lo llenaba de esperanzas y le confirmaba que esa tarde se iba a poner muy feliz con la noticia.*

Matías was full of curiosity. On the way home, he just thought about the note. He looked at the moon and tried to talk to her. Although he didn't hear anything, there was something that filled him with hope and confirmed that he was going to be very happy with the news that afternoon.

*Se había sentado al lado de una señora de unos 50 años que le contaba que ella tenía un nieto de la edad de él, que se llamaba Julián y que su mamá siempre supo que sería varón. Matías se dio cuenta de inmediato de cuál sería la sorpresa. Su mamá le había contado historias similares sobre el día en que él nació. La miró a la luna, cerró los ojos, y le dio las gracias. El mensaje era cierto, era una gran sorpresa y él ya sabía cuál era. Siempre había querido una mejor amiga con quién compartir su vida. Ya sabía quién había dejado ese mensaje en su cartuchera. Bajó del autobús y fue corriendo a su casa. Había muchos autos estacionados en la calle, y su casa era la que más brillaba a la luz de la luna. Se veían muchas siluetas en las cortinas de la ventana. Sentía un clima navideño en pleno julio.*

He had sat next to a lady in her 50s who told her that she had a grandson his age, that his name was Julian and that his mother always knew he would be male. Matías immediately realized what the surprise would be. His mother had told him similar stories about the day he was born. He looked at the moon, closed his eyes, and thanked him. The message was true, it was a big surprise and he already knew what it was. He had always wanted a best friend with whom to share his life. He already knew who had left that message in his holster. He got off the bus and ran home. There were many cars parked on the street, and his house was the one that shone brighter in the moonlight. There were many silhouettes in the window curtains. I felt a Christmas weather in the middle of July.

*Llegó rápido, abrazó fuerte a su papá y se encontró con sus abuelos, sus dos tíos con su hija, sus primos, y su tía. Todos sus parientes estaban allí. Y detrás de todos ellos estaba su mamá. Matías se acercó llorando de felicidad y le dio un beso a su mamá. En sus brazos estaba Rocío, tan pequeña y frágil. Matías la sostuvo en sus brazos y le dijo:*

He arrived quickly, hugged his dad tightly and met his grandparents, his two uncles with his daughter, his cousins, and his aunt. All his relatives were there. And behind all of them was his mom. Matías approached crying

with happiness and kissed his mother. In his arms was Rocío, so small and fragile. Matthias held her in his arms and said:

*-Tú serás mi mejor amiga. Te enseñaré a hacer las mejores bromas, nos divertiremos con las mejores travesuras y te cuidaré siempre. Pero mamá, ¿cómo sabías que sería niña?*

-You will be my best friend. I will teach you to make the best jokes, we will have fun with the best pranks and I will always take care of you. But mom, how did you know it would be a girl?

*-Yo siempre lo supe, hijo. No solo fue la luna, sino que cuando deseas algo con fuerza, amor, honestidad y desinterés, tus deseos se hacen realidad.*

-I always knew, son. Not only was the moon, but when you want something with strength, love, honesty and disinterest, your wishes come true.

*-Si hubiera sido niño, lo hubiera querido igual.*

*-Lo sé, hijo.*

*Todos habían traído regalos. Sus tíos le trajeron ropa de todos colores - violeta , amarillo, marrón , negro , verde , celeste y naranja. Sus abuelos le trajeron un cochecito. Su tía le trajo la cuna que había prometido. Pero el que había recibido el mejor regalo de todos era Matías - una hermanita.*

-If I had been a child, I would have wanted it the same.

-I know, son.

Everyone had brought gifts. His uncles brought him clothes of all colors - violet, yellow, brown, black, green, light blue and orange. His grandparents brought him a stroller. His aunt brought him the crib he had promised. But the one who had received the best gift of all was Matthias - a little sister.

## Quiz

1. ¿Qué hizo Matías después de tomar el desayuno?
  - a. Fui a jugar
  - b. fue a la cama
  - c. fue a la escuela

2. ¿Por qué no podía la madre Matías llevarlo a la escuela?
  - a. Ella trabajó temprano en la fábrica
  - b. Ella estaba mal
  - c. Ella estaba embarazada
  
3. ¿Cómo se llamaba el niño que esperaba a Matías en el autobús?
  - a. Conocer
  - b. Kevin
  - c. Karen
  
4. ¿Qué pasó camino a la escuela?
  - a. El autobús se rompió
  - b. Coches chocaron
  - c. Hubo fuego
  
5. ¿Qué regalos compraron los abuelos de Matías?
  - a. ropa de todos los colores
  - b. un cochecito
  - c. una cuna
  
1. *What did Matías do after taking breakfast?*
  - a. *Went to play*
  - b. *went to bed*
  - c. *went to school*
  
2. *Why couldn't Matías mother take him to school?*
  - a. *She worked early at the factory*
  - b. *She was unwell*
  - c. *She was pregnant*
  
3. *What was the name of the boy waiting for Matías at the bus?*
  - a. *Ken*
  - b. *Kevin*
  - c. *Karen*
  
4. *What happened on the way to school?*
  - a. *The bus broke*
  - b. *Cars crashed*
  - c. *There was fire*



5. *What gifts did the Matías grandparents buy?*

*a. clothes of all colors*

*b. a stroller*

*c. a crib*

### ***Respuestas***

1. c

2. c

3. b

4. b

5. b

### Answers

1. c

2. c

3. b

4. b

5. b

### **Vocabulario (Vocabulary)**

- *(Nos) divertiremos* --- (we) will have fun
- *(Te) cuidaré* --- (I) will take care of (you)
- *Abuelos* --- Grandparents
- *Agobiaban* --- Overwhelmed
- *Amarillo* --- Yellow
- *Amigo/ a* --- Friend
- *Amor* --- Love
- *Asistir* - To be present
- *Auto* --- Car
- *Bajaron* --- Got off

- *Bomberos* --- Firefighters
- *Brazos* --- Arms
- *Brillaba* --- Gleamed
- *Broma* --- Joke
- *Calle* --- Street
- *Cama* --- Bed
- *Caminando* --- Walking
- *Camión* --- Truck
- *Carpetas* --- Folders
- *Cartuchera* --- Pencil case
- *Celeste* --- Light blue
- *Celoso/ a* --- Jealous
- *Chofer* --- (bus) driver
- *Choque* --- Crash
- *Cierto* --- True
- *Clima* --- Environment
- *Cohecito* --- Stroller
- *Colegio* --- High school
- *Comenzó* --- started
- *Compartir* --- share
- *Conductores* --- (car) drivers
- *Corriendo* --- running
- *Cualquiera* --- any
- *Cuna* --- crib
- *De camino a* --- on (their) way to
- *Desayunaba* --- had breakfast
- *Deseas* --- wish
- *Desgracia* --- misfortune

- *Desinterés* --- selflessness
- *Disgusto* --- annoyance
- *Doblar* --- turn
- *Embarazada* --- pregnant
- *Enseñaré* --- will teach
- *Entendió* --- understood
- *Entonces* --- so
- *Escéptico* --- skeptical
- *Escrito a mano* --- handwritten
- *Escuchaba* --- listened
- *Esperanzas* --- hopes
- *Esquina* --- corner
- *Estacionados* --- parking
- *Estrecharon* --- shook-hands
- *Fábrica* --- factory
- *Felicidad* - happiness
- *Fuerza* --- strength
- *Gracias* --- thanks
- *Gran(de)* --- big
- *Había dejado* --- had left
- *Había querido* --- had wanted
- *Hermanita* --- little sister
- *Hija* --- daughter
- *Hijo* --- son
- *Hoy* --- today
- *Intentaba* --- tried
- *Levantaba* --- got up
- *Llorando* --- crying

- *Luna* --- moon
- *Maestro /a* --- teacher
- *Mamá* --- mom
- *Marrón* --- brown
- *Mejor* --- best
- *Miraba* --- looked
- *Molesto* --- annoying
- *Naranja* --- orange
- *Navideño* --- christmas
- *Negro* --- black
- *Nieto* --- grandson
- *Niña* --- girl
- *Ojos* --- eyes
- *Papá* --- dad
- *Parada* --- bus stop
- *Parientes* --- family members
- *Pequeña* --- little
- *Preguntarse* --- wonder
- *Primos* --- cousins
- *Pupitres* --- desks
- *Quizás* --- maybe
- *Regalos* --- presents
- *Sabía* --- knew
- *Saltó* --- jumped
- *Sanos* --- healthy
- *Señora* --- lady
- *Sentarse* --- sit down
- *Siempre* --- always

- *Sostuvo* --- held
- *Subieron* --- got on
- *Tarde* --- late
- *Temprano* --- early
- *Tía* --- aunt
- *Tíos* --- uncles
- *Travesuras* --- antics
- *Últimamente* --- recently
- *Varón* --- boy
- *Ventana* --- window
- *Verde* --- green
- *Vida* --- life
- *Vieron* --- saw
- *Violeta* --- purple

## 9. Salir Con Los Amigos

*Hoy es viernes y mis amigos se reúnen en un bar de deportes para ver el juego de futbol de la selección nacional. El juego empieza a las 6 pm y termina a las 8 pm. Yo voy a tomar el metro para poder llegar al área del bar. El bar está ubicado en la zona norte de la ciudad, queda como a 3 kilómetros de mi oficina. Yo no llevo el carro por que hoy tomo tres cervezas en el bar, y si se toma licor no se debe manejar. En el metro, me reúno con otros compañeros y nos vamos hacia el bar.*

Today is Friday, and my friends gather at a sports bar to watch the national soccer team game. The game starts at 6 pm and ends at 8 pm. I'm going to take the metro to get to the bar. The bar is located on the north part of the city. It is about 3 kilometers from my office. I do not take the car with me because today I will drink three beers at the bar. If you drink liquor, you should not drive. At the subway, I meet with other colleagues, and we go to the bar.

*Son las 5 pm, y el metro está muy congestionado, hay muchos pasajeros. La gente acaba de salir del trabajo, por lo que estamos en hora pico. A mí no me gusta usar el transporte público durante las horas pico porque, todos vamos como sardinas en latas, estamos muy apretados, yo creo que hay más de 300 personas en este vagón del metro.*

It is 5 pm, and the subway is very crowded, there are too many passengers. People just got off work, so we're at rush hour. I do not like to use public transportation during rush hour. Because we all get packed like sardines, we are very tight. I think there are more than 300 people in this subway car.

*Las puertas del vagón no cierran porque está muy lleno, alguien tendrá que bajarse para que cierren las puertas.*

*Ya llegué al bar, hay una cola de espera para entrar, el portero no me deja pasar si no hago la cola. Llamo por teléfono a mis compañeros y hablo con Víctor. Víctor sale del bar y le dice al portero que mi puesto está reservado, el portero me deja entrar. Hoy el bar está lleno, el juego de hoy es decisivo para la clasificación al mundial de Rusia. La selección juega en Santiago de Chile contra la selección Argentina.*

The car doors do not close because it is too full, someone will have to get off to close the doors.

I arrived at the bar; there is a long waiting line to enter, the Bouncer will not let me pass without making the line. I call my friends and talk to Victor. Victor gets out of the bar and tells the doorman that my seat is reserved; the porter lets me in. Today the bar is full. Today's game is decisive for qualifying for the World Cup in Russia. The selection plays in Santiago de Chile against the Argentina team.

*Todos están muy emocionados, la gente de mi ciudad es muy aficionada al fútbol, y siempre que juega la selección nacional, todos la quieren ver. Antes que empiece el juego, voy a pedir algo de comer, pido una hamburguesa con papas fritas, y de tomar un refresco. La mesonera es muy amable y trae la comida rápido. Me como todo, está muy sabroso.*

Everyone is very excited. The people of my city are very fond of soccer, and whenever the national team plays, everyone wants to see it. Before the game starts, I'm going to order something to eat. I order a hamburger with fries and a soda. The server is very friendly and brings the food fast. I eat everything; it is delicious.

*El juego empezó, los jugadores de Argentina se ven nerviosos. Todos en el bar están emocionados. Gritan como locos cada vez que los jugadores de la selección se acercan a la portería. El juego está muy bueno. El portero de nuestra selección es el mejor, tapa todos los tiros, nadie puede meterle un gol. Después del partido, ponen música, y la fiesta continúa, ahora las mujeres están bailando sobre la barra, y a la que aplaude más le regalan bebidas para todo su grupo.*

The game started, Argentinian players look nervous. Everyone at the bar is thrilled. They yell like crazy every time the players of the selection approach the goal. The game is very good. The goalkeeper of our team is the best, cover all the shots, nobody can put a goal. After the game, they put on music, and the party goes on, now the women are dancing on the bar, and the one who gets more cheers gains free drinks for her whole group.

*La música está muy movida, el ambiente es festivo, la gente está alegre por el juego. Mi vecina está en el bar y me invita a bailar, yo bailo con ella y de repente me pregunta a qué hora me voy, yo le respondo que no lo sé. Ella*

*me pide que por favor le dé un aventón hasta su casa cuando me vaya. Yo le digo que no tengo carro, que el carro está en la casa. Ella me dice que, por favor, cuando me vaya a mi casa le avise, y que yo la acompañe a la casa de ella, porque le da miedo irse sola en taxi.*

The music is vivacious; the atmosphere is festive; people are happy for the game. My neighbor is at the bar and invites me to dance, I dance with her, and she asks me, at what time I go, I reply that I do not know. She asks me to please give her a ride home when I leave. I tell her that I do not have a car that the car is at home. She tells me to let her know when I go to my house and that I accompany her to her home because she is scared to go alone in a taxi.

### **Quiz**

1. ¿Dónde se reúnen mis amigos el viernes?
  - a. Bar deportivo
  - b. En el garaje
  - c. restaurante
  
2. ¿Por qué dejo mi auto hoy?
  - a. Llegaré tarde
  - b. Estaré borracho
  - c. Prefiero caminar
  
3. ¿Por qué está lleno el metro?
  - a. Tráfico vehicular
  - b. demasiados pasajeros
  - c. hubo lluvias
  
4. ¿Cómo estuvo el servidor?
  - a. Amistoso
  - b. triste
  - c. silencio

### **Answers**

1. a



2. b

3. b

4. a

## **Vocabulary / Vocabulario**

- Companion --- *Compañeros*
- Gather --- *Gather*
- Pub --- *Bar*
- Sports Bar --- *Bar Deportivo*
- Football --- *Futbol*
- Beers --- *Cervezas*
- Food --- *Comida*
- Questions --- *Preguntas*
- Answers --- *Respuestas*
- Goal --- *Portería*

## 10. La Lectura Del Testamento

*Al otro día me ducho y salgo apurado. Tomo un taxi hasta la dirección que tengo anotada en el papel. Llegamos. El taxi para delante de un edificio muy lujoso. Al igual que la otra vez, no tiene cambio y tengo que decirle “quédese con el vuelto.”*

The next day I take a shower and leave in a hurry. I take a taxi to the address I have written on the paper. We arrived. The taxi stops in front of a very luxurious building. Like the other time, it has no changed and I have to say "stay with the return."

*Cuando veo esa fachada tan lujosa, dudo por un momento. Echo una mirada a mi ropa y me peino hacia atrás con las manos. No sé si estoy bien vestido como para entrar en un lugar así. Estoy vestido con una camisa de jean, un suéter verde y unos jeans de color azul oscuro. Tengo un estilo más bien informal y normalmente me siento muy seguro y cómodo así. Pero ahora, frente a este edificio que parece tan formal, me siento un poco fuera de lugar.*

When I see that luxurious facade, I doubt for a moment. I take a look at my clothes and comb my hair back. I don't know if I'm well dressed to enter such a place. I am dressed in a jean shirt, a green sweater and dark blue jeans. I have a rather casual style and I usually feel very safe and comfortable as well. But now, in front of this building that seems so formal, I feel a bit out of place.

*Subo en el ascensor hasta el piso indicado y veo que allí ya hay algunas personas esperando que empiece la lectura del testamento. Veo algunos señores de traje, los abogados y pocos más. En total somos unas quince personas.*

I climb in the elevator to the floor indicated and see that there are already some people waiting for the reading of the will to begin. I see some gentlemen in suits, lawyers and few more. In total we are about fifteen people.

*Recorro la sala en donde pusieron algunas sillas y un escritorio. A un lado hay una máquina de café y decido avanzar hacia allí, pero mis ojos se*

*detienen en algo que me llama muchísimo la atención. En alguien, mejor dicho.*

I walk around the room where they put some chairs and a desk. On one side there is a coffee machine and I decide to move there, but my eyes stop at something that catches my attention. In someone, rather.

*Parada junto a una de las ventanas, mirando hacia afuera, veo la silueta de uno de los seres más llamativos que he visto en mi vida. Es una mujer de estatura mediana, con el pelo corto, liso y desordenado, teñido a mechones, de rosa y verde. Tiene puesto un vestido negro, muy ceñido, de tela suave y zapatos negros de taco alto. Está recostada graciosamente contra la ventana. Como si adivinara mi mirada en su espalda, se da vuelta y me mira. Tiene los ojos verdes más helados que el invierno de Londres y una boca roja cruel que se entorna un poco en una sonrisa pícaro cuando me descubre mirándola.*

Standing by one of the windows, looking out, I see the silhouette of one of the most striking beings I have seen in my life. She is a woman of medium stature, with short, straight and messy hair, dyed in strands of pink and green. She is wearing a black dress, very tight, soft fabric and black high heels. She is leaning graciously against the window. As if guessing my gaze on his back, he turns and looks at me. He has green eyes colder than the winter of London and a cruel red mouth that slightly arouses a mischievous smile when he discovers me looking at her.

— *¿Qué haces, Faraday? Me saluda con su media sonrisa. Intento parecer tranquilo y le extiendo la mano. Ahora sí ella se ríe un poco y me da la mano. —Zoé García, encantada. Qué formales son ustedes por aquellos lados, che.*

- What are you doing, Faraday? He greets me with his half smile. I try to appear calm and reach out. Now she laughs a little and shakes my hand. — Zoé García, delighted. How formal are you on those sides, che.

*Cuando se mueve siento su perfume como de naranja y madera. Quiero preguntarle mil cosas. En realidad, quiero quedarme ahí hablando con ella y no escuchar una aburrida lectura de testamento, pero justo en ese momento, una de las abogadas nos llama para sentarnos y empezar. Suspiro resignado y me acerco. Zoé se sienta unos asientos más adelante y*

*me paso todo el tiempo observando la forma en la que las puntas de su pelo de colores acarician el aire.*

When it moves I feel its perfume like orange and wood. I want to ask you a thousand things. I really want to stay there talking to her and not hear a boring reading of will, but just then, one of the lawyers calls us to sit down and start. I sigh in resignation and approach. Zoé sits a few seats ahead and I spend all the time observing the way in which the tips of her colored hair caress the air.

### **Quiz**

1. ¿Qué hago antes de irme?

- a. Comimos
- b. Duchado
- c. trapeado

2. ¿Qué había en la habitación?

- a. camas
- b. esteras
- c. sillas

3. ¿Quién me saludó con una sonrisa?

- a. Zoé
- b. Faraday
- c. Frida

### **Answers**

- 1. b
- 2. c
- 3. b

## Vocabulary / Vocabulario

- *fachada* --- facade
- *manos* --- hands
- *azul* --- blue
- *edificio* – building
- *estilo* --- style
- *ascensor* --- elevator
- *algunos* --- Some
- *detienen* --- stop
- *silueta* --- silhouette
- *mueve* --- move
- *abogadas* --- lawyers
- *acarician* --- caress

# 11. Granja Los Villalobos

*Los Villalobos, una familia de cuatro integrantes, el señor Jacobo, la señora María y sus dos hijos Luciano y Sara viven en una granja ubicada en las afueras de Costa Rica.*

*Jacobo quien hereda la granja de su padre, siempre tuvo el sueño de hacer de ella una atracción turística y siempre que podía comprar más hectáreas lo hacía para ampliar su variedad de animales.*

Los Villalobos, a family of four, Mr. Jacobo, Mrs. Maria and their two children Luciano and Sara live in a farm located on the outskirts of Costa Rica.

Jacobo, who inherits his father's farm, always had the dream of making it a tourist attraction and whenever he could buy more hectares he did so to expand his variety of animals.

*Su hijo Luciano quien también ama a los animales como su padre, siempre ha querido tener un espacio en la granja especialmente para sus animales favoritos, que son las aves.*

*Luciano tiene una pequeña colección. Tiene una pareja de aves quetzal, una pájaro campana y una guacamaya roja. Les tiene mucho aprecio ya que los heredó de su abuelo. Una mañana nublada la granja está muy tranquila y los animales descansan un tanto perezosos debido al clima tan fresco que había. No es una mañana soleada como solía ser. A lo lejos, se acerca el vecino.*

*Jacobo, saludando al vecino, le hace señas para que este se acerque a la casa y disfrute de un rico chocolate caliente.*

His son Luciano, who also loves animals like his father, has always wanted to have a space on the farm especially for his favorite animals, which are birds.

Luciano has a small collection. It has a pair of quetzal birds, a bell bird and a red barnacle. He has a lot of appreciation since he inherited them from his grandfather. A cloudy morning the farm is very quiet and the animals rest

somewhat lazy due to the cool weather. It is not a sunny morning as it used to be. In the distance, the neighbor approaches.

Jacobo, greeting the neighbor, beckons him to come to the house and enjoy a delicious hot chocolate.

*—Hola vecino, ¿qué lo trae por aquí? —pregunta Jacobo.*

*El vecino responde -*

*—Solo paso a saludar y quiero comentarle un par de cosas, o, mejor dicho, quiero proponerle un negocio —dijo el vecino.*

*—A ver coménteme ese negocio del que habla —responde Luciano mientras sirve dos tazas de chocolate caliente.*

"Hello neighbor, what brings you here?" Asks Jacobo.

The neighbor replies:

"I just say hello and I want to tell you a couple of things, or rather, I want to propose a business," said the neighbor.

"Let's see, tell me about that business you are talking about," Luciano replies while serving two cups of hot chocolate.

*Lo que pasa es que mi esposa quiere mudarse a la ciudad y poder estar más pendiente del negocio que tenemos allá, entonces estoy pensando en vender mi granja —dice el vecino. Jacobo se fue en pensamiento mientras su vecino seguía hablando. Solamente se imaginaba todo lo que iba a hacer si compraba esa granja. ¡Jacobo! ¿Me escuchaste todo lo que dije? —pregunta el vecino exaltado. Sí disculpa, es que me agrada mucho la idea y solo me estaba imaginando todos los planes que tengo para esas jugosas siete hectáreas que tienes —dice Jacobo. Perfecto, mañana vendré con mi abogado para que podamos hacer los papeles y llevar todo de forma legal —dice el vecino.*

What happens is that my wife wants to move to the city and be more aware of the business we have there, so I'm thinking of selling my farm," says the neighbor. Jacobo left in thought while his neighbor kept talking. He only imagined everything he was going to do if he bought that farm. Jacob! Did you hear everything I said? The exalted neighbor asks. Yes, I'm sorry, I

really like the idea and I was just imagining all the plans I have for those juicy seven hectares you have,” Jacobo says. Perfect, tomorrow I will come with my lawyer so we can do the papers and take everything legally,” says the neighbor.

*Se despiden ambos vecinos y Jacobo llama a sus hijos y a su esposa para contarles lo que le acaba de decir el vecino y todos los planes que tiene. Podemos ampliar nuestro corral, nuestro establo y podemos tener una jaula grande para poder albergar tus aves, Luciano —comenta muy emocionado Jacobo. Llega el día siguiente, esta vez sí era una mañana soleada como la mayoría, pero a Jacobo eso no le importó y desde horas de la mañana ya estaba sentado en el frente de su casa esperando a su vecino.*

Both neighbors say goodbye and Jacobo calls his children and his wife to tell them what the neighbor just told him and all the plans he has. We can expand our pen, our stable and we can have a large cage to house your birds, Luciano,” says Jacobo, very excited. The next day arrives, this time it was a sunny morning like most, but Jacobo didn't mind that and since morning he was already sitting in the front of his house waiting for his neighbor.

*¡Vecino, vecino! —Escucha Jacobo a lo lejos, a lo que se asoma y ve a su vecino acercarse junto a un hombre con un traje negro y sosteniendo un maletín negro. Buenos días, Jacobo, te presento a mi abogado que siempre me ha acompañado en todos mis negocios. Ya le comenté que quiero vender mi granja y él ha venido a hacerlo legal dice el vecino. Perfecto, vamos a concretar esto —dice Jacobo. Pasaron dos horas platicando y firmando los papeles de su nueva adquisición. Finalmente, el vecino se despide con ojos llorosos debido a que acaba de vender su granja.*

Neighbor, neighbor! —Listen to Jacobo in the distance, what he looks at and sees his neighbor approaching with a man in a black suit and holding a black briefcase. Good morning, Jacobo, I present to you my lawyer who has always accompanied me in all my businesses. I already told him that I want to sell my farm and he has come to make it legal, says the neighbor. Perfect, let's make this happen,” says Jacobo. They spent two hours talking and signing the papers of their new acquisition. Finally, the neighbor says goodbye with teary eyes because he has just sold his farm.



*Pasaron dos meses durante los cuales Jacobo había dedicado tiempo para ampliar su granja, colocar nuevas jaulas y dividir por zonas los distintos animales que ya tenía y los nuevos que había comprado. Las áreas para las vacas, los cerdos, los caballos y hasta pequeños ponis estaban todos con sus respectivas cercas, áreas para comer y para la recreación de los animales. Uno de los más contentos por la nueva granja y por la nueva ampliación era su hijo Luciano, ya que finalmente tenía su espacio para sus aves.*

Two months passed during which Jacobo had dedicated time to expand his farm, place new cages and divide the different animals he already had and the new ones he had bought. The areas for cows, pigs, horses and even small ponies were all with their respective fences, areas for eating and for the recreation of animals. One of the happiest for the new farm and for the new extension was his son Luciano, since he finally had his space for his birds.

*Finalizada la ampliación de la granja, se reúnen en familia para la planificación de las áreas de atracción turística, desde una pequeña granja de contacto para los visitantes más pequeños hasta largas caminatas a caballo. En la reunión todos opinan -*

After the extension of the farm, they meet as a family to plan the areas of tourist attraction, from a small contact farm for smaller visitors to long walks on horseback. In the meeting everyone thinks:

*La granja de contacto tendrá animales pequeños como cerdos, ovejas y ponis para que los niños puedan jugar y alimentarlos —opina Sara. Buena idea, y las cabalgatas a caballo serán por el sendero norte que llegarán a la colina para ver el atardecer —dice Jacobo. Me parece muy romántico la idea de las cabalgatas, tienen que ser exclusivas para las parejas que nos visiten —acota la señora María.*

The contact farm will have small animals such as pigs, sheep and ponies so children can play and feed them, Sara says. Good idea, and horseback riding will be on the north path that will reach the hill to watch the sunset,” says Jacobo. The idea of horseback riding seems very romantic to me, they have to be exclusive for couples who visit us,” says María.

*Estaba pensando que una actividad familiar sería que todos puedan ordeñar una vaca y que vieran el proceso de cómo se hace la leche — agrega Luciano—. Al finalizar su tarde en la granja se podrán tomar una foto de recuerdo con mis bellas aves. Al terminar la reunión familiar, planifican cuándo será la gran apertura de la granja para el público, comienzan todos los preparativos y realizan un gran cartel que anuncia el día de apertura.*

I was thinking that a family activity would be for everyone to milk a cow and see the process of how milk is made, Luciano adds. At the end of your afternoon at the farm you can take a souvenir photo with my beautiful birds. At the end of the family reunion, they plan when the grand opening of the farm will be for the public, all preparations begin and they make a great poster that announces the opening day.

*Llegado el día de apertura, muchas personas emocionadas por conocer la hermosa granja de los Villalobos, se reúnen en la gran puerta de tablas de madera esperando la hora de entrada. Los Villalobos, un poco angustiados por todos los detalles para que la gran inauguración al público salga bien, se dividen las tareas del día y Jacobo dice -*

When the opening day arrives, many people excited to know the beautiful farm of the Villalobos, gather at the large wooden plank door waiting for the entrance time. The Villalobos, a little distressed by all the details so that the grand opening to the public goes well, the tasks of the day are divided and Jacobo says:

*Sofía, tú te vas a encargar de los niños en la granja de contacto, asegúrate que los alimenten y jueguen con ellos. María, tú organiza la cabalgata a caballo de las parejas y Luciano, prepara la cámara para las fotos con tus aves.*

Sofia, you will take care of the children in the contact farm, make sure they feed them and play with them. Maria, you organize the horseback riding of couples and Luciano, prepare the camera for photos with your birds.

*Luciano pregunta –*

Luciano asks -

—¿Y tú papá, ¿qué harás?

—And you dad, what will you do?

—*Yo prepararé a las vacas con sus respectivos becerros y cubetas para que las familias las puedan ordeñar, previo a un pequeño curso de cómo hacerlo. —responde Jacobo.*

—I will prepare the cows with their respective calves and buckets, so that families can milk them, before a small course on how to do it. - Jacobo responds.

*Llega la hora de abrir las puertas y entre globos y música los visitantes entran a la hermosa granja de los Villalobos. Asombrados por lo que ven, comentan –*

It is time to open the doors and among balloons and music visitors enter the beautiful farm of the Villalobos. Amazed by what they see; they comment -

—*¡Qué hermosa es!, no puedo creer que exista un lugar tan bello y familiar en Costa Rica —dice una mamá que visita la granja con sus dos pequeños hijos.*

—How beautiful it is! I can't believe there is such a beautiful and familiar place in Costa Rica, — says a mother who visits the farm with her two young children.

—*Tenemos una granja de contacto donde sus pequeños hijos pueden estar con lindos animales, darles de comer y jugar con ellos —le dice Sofía a la mamá.*

—We have a contact farm where your little children can be with cute animals, feed them and play with them, — Sofia tells the mother.

*Los niños saltan de la emoción y corren a donde se encuentra la granja de contacto.*

Children jump from emotion and run to where is it located the contact farm.

*Muy emocionados los niños exclaman –*

Very excited the children exclaim–

—*¡Mira, mamá, un bebé cerdito y una pequeña oveja!, les daré de comer con este biberón.*

—Look, mom, a little baby pig and a little sheep! I will feed them with this bottle.

—*Son muy lindos, trátenlos con cuidado y amor —les dice la mamá a sus hijos.*

—They are very cute, treat them with care and love, — the mother tells her children.

*Al otro lado de la granja la señora María reúne a las parejas asistentes y les ofrece una romántica cabalgata a caballo hasta la colina, donde verán el hermoso atardecer y al finalizar degustarán unos ricos aperitivos.*

On the other side of the farm, Mrs. Maria gathers the couples who attended and offers a romantic horseback ride to the hill, where they will see the beautiful sunset and at the end they will taste some delicious snacks.

*Una pareja de recién casados, interesados en el paseo, comenta –*

A just married couple, interested in the ride, comment–

—*Me parece interesante ese paseo, ¿podemos escoger los caballos? — pregunta el esposo.*

—I think that ride is interesting, can we choose the horses? Asks the husband.

—*Claro que sí; vengan al establo y les muestro los caballos ensillados — responde María.*

—Of course; you come to the barn and I show you saddled horses— Maria answers.

*Al ir al establo, encuentran unos hermosos caballos pura sangre y María se los presenta –*

When they go to the barn, they find beautiful thoroughbred horses and Maria introduced to them. –

—*Este caballo negro es Cometa, es muy dócil y le encanta la zanahoria, este caballo blanco de aquí es Copo de Nieve, es muy veloz y le encanta que le trencen su cola.*

—This black horse is Cometa, it is very docile and it loves carrots, this white horse here is Copo de nieve, it is very fast and it loves to be braided in his tail.

—*¡Me gusta Copo de Nieve!, ese será mi caballo —dice la esposa entusiasmada.*

—I like Copo de nieve! That will be my horse," says the excited wife.

—*Entonces el mío será Cometa, me encantan los caballos negros — responde el esposo que visita la granja.*

—Then mine will be Cometa, I love black horses — replies the husband who visits the farm.

—*Está bien, móntense en sus respectivos caballos que les espera una hermosa puesta de sol —dice María a la pareja de recién casados.*

— All right, get on your respective horses that a beautiful sunset awaits, — Maria says to the just married couple.

*La pareja inicia la cabalgata por un hermoso sendero cubierto de un césped totalmente verde, con un clima agradable y escuchando los sonidos característicos de todos los animales que habitan en la granja.*

The couple starts the ride on a beautiful path covered with a completely green lawn, with a pleasant climate and listening to the characteristic sounds of all the animals that inhabit the farm.

*El señor Jacobo se reúne con las familias asistentes y les dicta una breve charla de como es el proceso de obtención de leche de vaca, y pregunta a los asistentes –*

Mr. Jacob meets with the attending families and gives them a brief talk about the process of obtaining cow's milk, and asks the attendees—

—*¿Alguien quiere ordeñar una de estas hermosas vacas mariposas?*

—Does anyone want to milk one of these beautiful butterfly cows?

*Y del grupo de asistentes, un padre y un hijo gritan emocionados –*

And from the group of assistants, a father and a son shout excitedly —

—¡Nosotros, nosotros!

—We, we!

*El señor Jacobo les pide que se acerquen a donde está la vaca junto a su pequeño becerro y dice que uno de los dos se sienta en un taburete de madera muy bajo, que los ayudará a alcanzar las ubres de la vaca.*

Mr. Jacobo asks them to go where the cow is next to his little calf and since one of the two sits on a very low wooden board, that will help them to reach the udders of the cow.

*El padre de familia se sienta y coloca a su hijo en su regazo, toman como les había enseñado previamente Jacobo las ubres de la vaca y empiezan a ordeñarlas.*

The father sits down and places his son in his lap, they take as Jacobo had previously taught them the cow udders and periodically milk them.

*El niño muy entusiasmado le dice al papá –*

The very excited boy tells his dad —

—*¡Papá, es leche como la que como con mi cereal!*

—Dad, it's milk like the one I eat with my cereal!

*Todas las familias asistentes se ríen y continúan observando el proceso de obtención de leche.*

All attending families laugh and continue to observe the process of obtaining milk.

*Mientras tanto, un grupo de jóvenes se encuentran con Luciano en el área de las jaulas de aves, y extasiados por los hermosos colores de cada especie de ave y por sus peculiares cantos, se toman fotos con cada una de ellas.*

Meanwhile, a group of young people meet Luciano in the area of bird cages, and ecstatic about the beautiful colors of each bird species and its peculiar songs, photos are taken with each of them.

—*Quiero una foto con el ave en mi cabeza —dice un joven emocionado.*

—I want a picture with the bird in my head, — says an excited young man  
—*¡Mi foto será alimentando al ave azul!* —exclama otra joven del grupo.

— My photo will be feeding the blue bird! — exclaims another a girl from the group.

*Jacobo complace a todos los presentes y les entrega su foto como recuerdo de la visita a la granja.*

Jacobo pleases to everyone present and gives them his photo as a souvenir of the visit to the farm.

*Al finalizar el día de apertura de la granja, toda la familia Villalobos se reúne para la cena y concluyen, que la inauguración de la granja para el público ha sido todo un éxito y que lo harían cada fin de semana de sus vidas.*

At the end of the farm's opening day, whole family of Villalobos meets for dinner and concludes the inauguration of the farm for the public that has been a success and that they would do it every weekend of their lives.

## **Resumen**

*Los Villalobos es una familia de cuatro integrantes, que viven en una granja en las afueras de Costa Rica. Jacobo, el padre de la familia, tiene como objetivo ampliar el tamaño de su granja, tener más animales y convertirla en una atracción turística. A Jacobo se le presenta una gran oportunidad por la venta de la granja vecina, y emprende junto al resto de su familia la remodelación de la granja para convertirla en lo que siempre quiso, un lugar con constantes visitas de familias y grupos.*

The Villalobos is a family of four who live on a farm in the outskirts of Costa Rica. Jacobo, the father of the family, aims to expand the size of his farm, have more animals and turn it into a tourist attraction. Jacobo is presented with a great opportunity for the sale of the neighboring farm, and undertakes with the rest of his family the remodeling of the farm to make it what he always wanted, a place with constant visits from families and groups.

## Quiz

1. ¿De quién heredó las aves Luciano?
  - a. De su padre
  - b. De su abuelo
  - c. De su hermana
2. ¿Qué actividad planeaban para los visitantes más pequeños?
  - a. Paseos a caballos
  - b. Fotos con las aves
  - c. Granja de contacto
3. ¿Quién organiza las cabalgatas para las parejas?
  - a. María
  - b. Sofía
  - c. Luciano
4. ¿Qué caballo escoge el esposo que visita la granja?
  - a. Copo de Nieve
  - b. Cometa
  - c. Guacamaya roja
5. ¿Cuándo harán más aperturas al público luego de la exitosa inauguración?
  - a. Todos los días
  - b. Nunca
  - c. Cada fin de semana

## Answers

1. B
2. C
3. A
4. B
5. C

## Vocabulary / Vocabulario



- *Integrantes* --- Members
- *Granja* --- Farm
- *Afuera* --- Outskirts
- *Hereda* --- Inherit
- *Atracción turística* --- Tourist attraction
- *Hectáreas* --- Hectares
- *Espacio* --- Space
- *Aves* --- Birds
- *Quetzal* --- (A type of bird)
- *Guacamaya roja* --- Scarlet macaw
- *Nublada* --- Cloudy
- *Perezosos* --- Lazy
- *Clima* --- Weather
- *Soleada* --- Sunny
- *Solía* --- Used to
- *Vecino* --- Neighbour
- *Saludar* --- To greet
- *Negocio* --- Deal
- *Esposa* --- Wife
- *Mudarse* --- To move out
- *Pendiente* --- Attentive
- *Vender* --- To sell
- *Imaginaba* --- Imagined
- *Agrada* --- pleases
- *Planes* --- Plans
- *Abogado* --- lawyer
- *Legal* --- Legal
- *Establo* --- Barn

- *Jaula* --- Cage
- *Albergar* --- To harbor
- *Frente* --- Front
- *Traje negro* --- Black suit
- *Sosteniendo* --- Holding
- *Maletín* --- Briefcase
- *Concretar* --- To finalize
- *Platicando* --- Talking
- *Firmando* --- Signing
- *Adquisición* --- Acquisition
- *Jaulas* --- Cages
- *Zonas* --- Areas
- *Vacas* --- Cows
- *Cerdos* --- Pigs
- *Caballos* --- Horses
- *Ponis* --- Ponies
- *Cercas* --- Fences
- *Recreación* --- Recreation
- *Planificación* --- Planning
- *Granja de contacto* --- Contact farm/Petting farm
- *Caminatas* --- Walks
- *Ovejas* --- Sheep
- *Cabalgatas* --- Horseback riding
- *Sendero* --- Path
- *Colina* --- Hill
- *Atardecer* --- Sunset
- *Romántico* --- Romantic
- *Parejas* --- Couples

- *Actividad familiar* --- Family activity
- *Ordeñar* --- To milk
- *Agrega* --- Adds
- *Apertura* --- Opening
- *Preparativos* --- Preparations
- *Tablas de madera* --- Wooden boards
- *Angustiados* --- Preoccupied
- *Inauguración* --- Opening
- *Tareas* --- Tasks
- *Asegúrate* --- You make sure
- *Cámara* --- Camera
- *Becerras* --- Calves
- *Cubetas* --- Buckets
- *Curso* --- Course
- *Globos* --- Balloons
- *Asombrados* --- Amazed
- *Darles de comer* --- Feed them
- *Trátenlos* --- Treat them (instructions)
- *Cuidado* --- Care
- *Aperitivos* --- Appetizers
- *Recién casados* --- Just married
- *Escoger* --- To choose
- *Ensilados* --- Saddled
- *Pura sangre* --- Pure blood
- *Cometa* --- Comet or kite
- *Zanahoria* --- Carrot
- *Copo de Nieve* --- Snowflake
- *Veloz* --- Fast

- *Trencen* --- Braid
- *Caballos negros* --- Black horses
- *Móntense* --- Mount (a horse)
- *Puesta de sol* --- Sunset
- *Césped* --- Grass
- *Agradable* --- Nice
- *Habitan* --- They inhabit (Verb --- habitar)
- *Charla* --- Chat
- *Proceso* --- Process
- *Vacas mariposas* --- White cows with black spots
- *Taburete de madera* --- Wooden stool
- *Alcanzar* --- To reach
- *Ubres* --- Udders
- *Regazo* --- Lap
- *Mientras tanto* --- Meanwhile
- *Jóvenes* --- Young boys
- *Especie* --- Species
- *Cantos* --- Songs
- *Complace* --- Pleases
- *Entrega* --- Gives
- *Recuerdo* --- Memory
- *Éxito* --- Success
- *Fin de semana* --- Weekend

## 12. Los Piratas Del Bufón Errante (Torpes En Tierra Y En Mar)

The Pirates of the Wandering Jester (Clumsy on Land and Sea)

*Todo sucedió tan rápido que nadie sabe qué fue lo que paso. ¿Qué paso? Eran siete barcos piratas, anclados en una montaña en el medio de la nada, no había mar, océano, rio, riachuelo , charco , pantano ni nada que esté relacionado con el agua. Simplemente eran siete barcos en una montaña sin ningún tipo de razón o explicación alguna.*

Everything happened so fast that no one knows what happened. What happened? There were seven pirate ships anchored on a mountain in the middle of nowhere. There was no sea, ocean, river, stream, puddle, swamp, or anything that is related to water around. They were simply seven ships on a mountain without any kind of reason or explanation.

*Piratas urbanos de ciudad establecieron su guarida en las montañas para permanecer ocultos. Estaban buscando un extraño tesoro que llevaba más de mil años enterrado en alguna parte de la ciudad. Por eso desarrollaron un sistema de ruedas y neumáticos para sus barcos y poder trasladarse desde los mares hasta las ciudades. Los Barcos Carros, auto barcos, navegaron por mar y tierra, de puerto en puerto de pueblo en pueblo, de ciudad en ciudad.*

City urban pirates established their lair in the mountains to stay hidden. They were looking for a strange treasure that had been buried somewhere in the city. That's why they developed a system of wheels and tires for their ships to be able to move from the seas to the cities. The ships cars, auto boats, navigated by sea and land, from seaport to village port from, city to city.

*El día de su llegada los piratas venían de una legendaria fiesta de corsarios por el Mar Muerto. Que siguió en el mar Mediterráneo terminaron a en el mar Caribe descubrieron que el verdadero Mar Muerto en realidad queda en Puerto Rico y no en Jordania. De hecho, el Mar Muerto en Puerto Rico está vivo y bueno.*

The day of their arrival, the pirates came from a legendary party of pirates by the Dead Sea that flowed into the Mediterranean Sea. They ended up in the Caribbean Sea as they discovered that the true Dead Sea actually ends in Puerto Rico and not in Jordan. In fact, the Dead Sea in Puerto Rico is alive and well.

*Eran conocidos como los Piratas del Bufón Errante, torpes en tierra y en mar. Y estaban convencidos de que la leyenda del tesoro del Morokotongo era cierta y estaba escondido en este pequeño Pueblo de Los Andes rodeado de montañas, cuentan los Antiguos historiadores que el tesoro de Morokotongo pertenecía al rey de los piratas, el temible Barbacoa.*

They were known as the Pirates of the Wandering Jester, clumsy on land and sea. And they were convinced that the legend of the treasure of the Morokotongo was true and was hidden in this small town in the Andes surrounded by mountains. The ancient historians say that the treasure of Morokotongo belonged to the king of the pirates, the fearsome Barbacoa.

*En 1883, se lo robo al conde de Bermeja. Barbacoa derrochó gran parte del tesoro en sus viajes y aventuras por los siete mares. El resto lo escondió tan bien que ningún otro pirata ha podido encontrarlo. Muchos grupos de piratas dejaron incluso de navegar para dedicarse solo a la búsqueda de ese tesoro.*

In 1883, he stole the treasure from the Count of Bermeja. Barbacoa squandered much of the treasure in his travels and adventures on the seven seas. The rest he hid so well that no other pirate has been able to find it. Many groups of pirates even stopped sailing to dedicate themselves alone to the search for that treasure.

*Los Piratas del Bufón Errante habían estudiado todos los errores cometidos por los piratas anteriores. Bajo juramento del código de los piratas se prometían - encontrar el legendario tesoro y pasar a la historia como los únicos piratas que descifraron la coordenada del mapa del gran Barbacoa.*

The Pirates of the Wandering Jester had studied all the mistakes made by the previous pirates. Under oath of the code, the pirates promised themselves to find the legendary treasure and go down in history as the only pirates who deciphered the map coordinates of the great Barbacoa.

*Pero eran un poco despistados, atolondrados y locos. Bueno todos los piratas están locos, pero estos de verdad estaban chiflados. El día que decidieron buscar él te sonó, de Morokotongo fue una verdadera locura. Apenas zarparon , todo fue un caos.*

But they were a bit clueless and mad. Well, all the pirates are crazy, but they really were nuts. The day they decided to look for the treasure, Morokotongo was full of real madness. As soon as they set sail, everything was chaotic.

*¡Se va se va la Baarcaa...toodos a bordooooo! grito el capitán Jaky Esparragos.*

“The boat is leaving! All of you aboard!” Captain Jaky Esparragos shouted.

*¿Para donde se va? respondió el primero al mando,*

“Where does it go?” responded the first in command.

*¿Qué dicen las velas? grito el capitán.*

“What do the sails say?” said the captain.

No dicen nada capitán están calladas.

“They do not say anything, Captain. They are silent.”

*¿Quién dejó entrar a estos monos? protestaba el capitán. Monos por todos lados del barco, colgados y saltando, desordenando y rompiendo todo lo que encontraban a su paso, acabaron con las provisiones. En la pelea contra los monos, aparecieron sesenta loros y repetían lo mismo.*

“Who let these monkeys in?” the captain protested. Monkeys were all over the ship, hanging and jumping, messing up and breaking everything in their path. They ended up with provisions and in the fight against the monkeys; sixty parrots appeared and repeated the same thing.

*“Rua la la Morokotongo Morokotongo peligro peligro la la rua rua donde donde Morokotongo rua rua.” habla los loros.*

"Rua la la Morokotongo Morokotongo danger danger la rua rua where where Morokotongo rua rua."

*Se desato una gran tormenta y una de las velas se incendió. Un relámpago le pulverizo el sombrero al capitán. Los monos se bebieron todo el barril de cerveza y los toneles de vino y enloquecieron los loros se alborotaron también.*

A great storm broke and one of the sails caught fire. A lightning bolt smashed the captain's hat. The monkeys drank the whole barrel of beer and wine and the parrots went mad.

*Los sorprendió un bucanero y se enfrentaron a cañonazos y espadas por una hora. Así transcurrían todos sus viajes por mar y tierra. Y tenían la costumbre, como todos los piratas, de hacer retos y torneos entre ellos diciendo cosas como -*

They were surprised by a buccaneer and faced guns and swords for an hour. This is how all his trips by sea and land passed. And they had the habit, like all pirates, of making challenges and tournaments between them -

*¡Mi espada es la más rápida de todo el océano!*

“My sword is the fastest in the whole ocean!”

*¡Blasfemia! ¡Mi espada es más veloz! ¡En guardia!*

“Blasphemy! My sword is faster. On guard!”

*¡Ya estoy listo! ¡Te demostrare que soy el mejor con la espada! ¿Ves esa mosca que está volando sobre la botella? ¡Mira!*

“I'm ready now. I will show you that I am the best with the sword. Do you see that fly that is flying over the bottle? Look.”

*Agarro mi espada y viste le corte las alas.*

I grab my sword and cut his wings.

*¡Eso no es nada! ¿Ves ese mosquito que vuela sobre la gorda panza del contramaestre? ¡Presta atención!*

“That is nothing. Do you see that mosquito that flies over the fat belly of the first mate? Pay attention!”

*Saco mi espada y zum...*



I take out my sword and zum...

*¡Ja Ja Ja, siguió volando fallaste!*

“¡Ha Ha ha, kept flying! You failed!”

*¡No falle para nada! ¡Es cierto que siguió volando, pero no va poder tener más hijos!*

“I did not fail at all! It is true that he kept flying, but he will not be able to have more children.”

*¿Que?*

“What?”

*¡Lo que escuchas y tal como te lo acabo de demostrar que soy el mejor con la espada!*

“What you hear and how I just showed you is that I am the best with the sword.”

*Otro de los retos piratas era “La Danza de La Plancha” que consistía en girar sobre tu propio cuerpo dando vueltas parado en un solo pie en el borde de la pucha abreva el olfato y la mirada de los tiburones. Todos los peligros riesgos y retos valían la pena porque el tesoro de Morokotongo era el mayor de todos los tesoros Dicen los que conocen la leyenda, que el tesoro del temible Barbacoa está compuesto de -*

Another of the pirate challenges was "The Dance of the Plank", which consisted of spinning on one foot on the edge of the plank above the nose and the eyes of the sharks. All the dangers risks and challenges were worth it because the treasure of Morokotongo was the greatest of all the treasures. Those who know the legend say that the treasure of the fearsome Barbacoa is composed of -

*ciento treinta - Toneladas de doblones de Plata*

One hundred and thirty - tons of silver doubloons

*dos mil ochocientos cincuenta - Lingotes de Oro*

Two thousand eight hundred and fifty - gold ingots

*mil cientos setenta y cinco - Esmeraldas*

One thousand one hundred seventy-five - emeralds

*novcientos ochenta y tres - Rubíes*

Nine hundred and eighty-three - rubies

*trescientos noventa y seis - Diamantes*

Three hundred ninety-six - diamonds

*dos mil cuatrocientos noventa y nueve - Monedas de Oro*

Two thousand four hundred and ninety-nine - gold coins

*tres mil cientos veintitrés - Joyas de Cristal*

Three thousand one hundred and twenty-three - crystal jewelry

*cuatro mil trescientos veinte - Esculturas de Bronce y Plata*

Four thousand three hundred and twenty - bronze and silver sculptures

*ochenta - Espadas Bañadas en Oro y Plata*

Eighty - swords bathed in gold and silver

*ciento noventa y cinco - Dagas Templadas en Oro*

One hundred and ninety-five - gold-plated daggers

*quinientos setenta y cinco - collares de Perlas Preciosas*

Five hundred seventy-five - precious pearl necklaces

*Después de recorrer y saquear todo el pueblo los piratas del bufón errante no tenían pista alguna del fabuloso tesoro, habían seguido las instrucciones del mapa al pie de la letra. Y no sabían que era lo que estaba mal hasta que se dieron cuenta que todo el tiempo habían estado leyendo el mapa a reves.*

After touring and plundering the entire town, the Pirates of the Wandering Jester had no clue to the location fabulous treasure. They had followed the instructions on the map to the letter. They did not know what was wrong until they realized that they had been reading the map upside down all the time.

## Quiz

1. ¿Dónde estaban los siete barcos?
  - a. Océano
  - b. Mar
  - c. Montaña
2. ¿Dónde habían establecido su guarida los piratas de la ciudad urbana?
  - a. montañas
  - b. Mar
  - c. Océano
3. ¿De dónde venían los piratas?
  - a. mar Mediterráneo
  - b. Mar Muerto
  - c. Montaña
4. ¿Dónde fue robado el tesoro en 1883?
  - a. Montaña
  - b. Conde de bermeja
  - c. Mar Muerto

## Answers

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. b

## Vocabulary / Vocabulario

- *acabaron* --- (ah-kah-bah-rohn) Transitive verb --- they finished; conjugated form of acabar, past third person plural
- *agarró* --- (ah-gahr-roh) Transitive verb --- I grab; conjugated form of agarrar, present first person singular

- *alborotaron* --- (ahl-boh-roh-tah-rohn) Transitive verb --- they disturbed; conjugated form of alborotar, past third person plural
- *anclados* --- (ahn-klahr) Intransitive verb --- to anchor
- *anterior* --- (ahn-teh-ryohr) Adjective --- front, previous
- *aparecieron* --- (ah-pah-reh-seh-rohn) Intransitive verb --- they appeared; conjugated form of aparecer, past third person plural
- *bajo* --- (bah-hoh) Adjective --- short, low
- *bañada* --- (bah-nyah-dah) Feminine noun --- bath, swim
- *bebieron* --- (beh-beh-ehr-rohn) Transitive verb --- they drink; conjugated form of beber, past third person plural
- *blasfemia* --- (Blahs-feh-mee-ah) Feminine noun --- blasphemy
- *botella* --- (boh-teh-yah) Feminine noun --- bottle
- *bronce* --- (brohn-seh) Masculine noun --- bronze
- *bufón* --- (boo-fohn) Masculine noun --- buffon, fool
- *cañonazo* --- (kah-nyoh-nah-soh) Masculine noun --- cannon shot
- *caribe* (ka-ree-beh) Proper noun --- Carribean
- *cerveza* --- (sehr-beh-sah) Feminine noun --- beer
- *charco* --- (chahr-koh) Masculine noun --- puddle, pool
- *chiflados* --- (chee-flahr) Transitive verb --- to whistle
- *ciento noventa y cinco* (see-en-toe no-vehn-tah ee sen-coh) Adjective --- the number one hundred ninety-five
- *ciento treinta* (see-en-toe trin-tah) Adjective --- the number one hundred thirty
- *collar* --- (koh-yahr) Masculine noun --- necklace
- *cometido* --- (koh-meh-tee-doh) Masculine noun --- task, mission, duty
- *compuesto* --- (kohm-pwehs-toh) Masculine noun --- compound
- *corsarios* --- (kohr-sah-ryoh) Masculine or Feminine noun --- pirate

- *crystal* --- (krees-tahl) Masculine noun --- glass, shard of glass
- *cuatro mil trescientos veinte* (quat-roh mill tres-see-en-tohs ven-tea)  
Adjective --- the number four thousand three hundred twenty
- *cuervo* --- (kwehr-poh) Masculine noun --- body
- *daga* --- (dah-gah) Feminine noun --- dagger
- *dedicarse* --- (deh-dee-kahr-seh) Pronominal verb --- to do for a living
- *demonstrare* --- (deh-mohs-trah-rey) Transitive verb --- I will demonstrate; conjugated form of demostrar, future subjunctive form, first person singular
- *derrocho* --- (deh-rroh-cho) Transitive verb --- I squander; conjugated form of derrochar, present first person singular
- *desarrollaron* --- (deh-sah-rroh-yahr) Transitive verb --- they developed; conjugated form of desarrollar, past third person plural
- *descifraron* --- (deh-see-frah-rohn) Transitive verb --- they deciphered; conjugated form of decifrar, past third person plural
- *descubrieron* --- (dehs-koo-breer) Transitive verb --- they discovered, conjugated form of descubrir, past third person plural
- *desordenando* --- (dehs-ohr-deh-nahn-doh) Transitive verb --- to mess up
- *diamantes* --- (dyah-mahn-tehs) Plural noun --- diamonds
- *dos mil cuatrocientos noventa y nueve* (dohs mill quat-roh-see-en-tohs no-vehn-tah ee new-eh-veh) Adjective --- the number two thousand four hundred ninety-nine
- *dos mil ochocientos cincuenta* (dohs mill oh-cho-see-en-tohs sin-qwin-tah) Adjective --- the number two thousand eight hundred fifty
- *enloquecieron* --- (ehn-loh-keh-sehr) Transitive verb --- to go crazy, to drive crazy; conjugated form of enloquecer, past third person plural

- *enterrado* --- (ehn-teh-rrah-doh) Adjective --- buried
- *errante* --- (eh-rrahn-teh) Adjective --- wandering
- *esmeralda* --- (ehs-meh-rah-dah) Feminine noun --- emeralds
- *espada* --- (ehs-pah-dah) Feminine noun --- sword
- *estudiado* --- (ehs-too-dyah-doh) Adjective --- studied
- *fallaste* --- (fah-yah-steh) Intransitive verb --- you failed; conjugated form of fallar, past second person singular
- *gorda* --- (gohr-dah) Adjective --- fat, thick, big
- *joya* --- (hoh-yah) Feminine noun --- jewel
- *juramento* --- (hoo-rah-mehn-toh) Masculine noun --- oath
- *lingote* --- (leeng-goh-teh) Masculine noun --- ingot, gold bar
- *loro* --- (loh-roh) Masculine or Feminine noun --- parrot
- *mar* --- (mahr) Masculine noun --- sea, ocean
- *mil ciento setenta y cinco* (mill see-en-toe seh-tehn-tah ee seen-ko) Adjective --- the number one thousand one hundred seventy-five
- *mirada* --- (mee-rah-dah) Feminine noun --- look
- *monos* --- (moh-noh) Masculine or Feminine noun --- monkeys
- *mosca* --- (mohs-kah) Feminine noun --- fly
- *novcientos ochenta y tres* (no-veh-see-en-tohs oh-chin-tah ee trahys) Adjective --- the number nine hundred eighty-three
- *ochenta* --- (oh-chehn-tah) Adjective --- the number eighty
- *ocultos* --- (oh-kool-toh) Adjective --- hidden
- *oro* --- (oh-roh) Masculine noun --- gold
- *pantano* --- (pahn-tah-noh) Masculine noun --- swampland, wetland
- *panza* --- (pahn-sah) Feminine noun --- belly
- *perlas* --- (pehr-lah) Feminine noun --- pearls
- *permanecer* --- (pehr-mah-neh-sehr) Intransitive verb --- to stay

- *pertenecía* --- (pehr-teh-neh-seh-ah) Intransitive verb --- to belong to; conjugated form of pertenecer, imperfect first person singular
- *plancha* --- (plahn-chah) Feminine noun --- plank
- *preciosas* --- (preh-syoh-sahs) Adjective --- beautiful, precious
- *protestaba* --- (proh-tehs-tah-bah) Intransitive verb --- I protested; conjugated form of protestar, imperfect first person singular
- *quinientos setenta y cinco* --- (kee-nyehn-tohs say-ten-tah ee seen-ko) Adjective --- the number five hundred seventy-five
- *relámpago* --- (rreh-lahm-pah-goh) Masculine noun --- lightning
- *repetían* --- (rreh-peh-tee-ahn) Transitive verb --- to repeat, to do again; conjugated form of repetir, imperfect third person plural
- *tesoro* --- (teh-soh-roh) Masculine noun --- treasure
- *riachuelo* --- (rryah-chweh-loh) Masculine noun --- brook, stream
- *riesgos* --- (rryehs-goh) Masculine noun --- risk
- *ruedas* --- (rruh-eh-dahs) Intransitive verb --- you roll; conjugated form of rodar, present second person singular
- *saquear* --- (sah-keh-ahr) Transitive verb --- to loot
- *sesenta* --- (seh-sehn-tah) Adjective --- the number sixty
- *templadas* --- (tehm-plah-doh) Adjective --- lukewarm, mild
- *tesoro* --- (teh-soh-roh) Masculine noun --- treasure
- *tiburone* --- (tee-boo-rohn) Masculine noun --- shark
- *tipo* --- (tee-poh) Masculine noun --- type, class, sort
- *tonelada* --- (toh-neh-lah-dah) Feminine noun (weight) --- ton
- *tonto* --- (tohn-toh) Adjective --- stupid, dumb, idiot
- *torpes* --- (tohr-peh) Adjective --- clumsy, dim-witted
- *transcurrían* --- (trahns-koo-rreer) Intransitive verb --- they passed; conjugated form of transcurrir, imperfect third person plural

- *tres mil ciento veintitrés* (trays mill see-en-toe beyn-tee-trehs)  
Adjective --- the number three thousand one hundred twenty-three
- *trescientos noventa y seis* (trays-see-en-tohs no-ven-tah eh sahys)  
Adjective --- the number three hundred ninety-six
- *veloz* --- (beh-lohs) Adjective --- fast



## 13. Intuición En Custodia

*Un día común en la localidad de Capilla del Monte y Patricio decidió tomar el tren a San Juan. Todos los meses, Patricio iba a visitar a su papá, que vivía en Caucete en San Juan. Patricio tenía muy buena intuición con las personas que lo rodeaban. Él, por ejemplo, sabía que el chofer Norberto era un buen hombre que cuidaba de sus nietos. Seguramente tendría unos 65 años y siempre que lo veía en el pueblo lo saludaba con calidez y esmero.*

An ordinary day in the town of Capilla del Monte and Patricio decided to take the train to San Juan. Every month, Patricio went to visit his father, who lived in Caucete in San Juan. Patricio had very good intuition with the people around him. He, for example, knew that the driver Norberto was a good man who took care of his grandchildren. Surely, he was about 65 years old and whenever he saw him in town he greeted him with warmth and care.

*Aquel lunes Patricio subió al tren, pero no encontró a Norberto. En su lugar, un hombre barbudo y de aspecto descuidado estaba al mando de la locomotora. La intuición de Patricio le indicaba que algo no andaba bien. Por lo que Patricio se acercó a preguntarle a este hombre qué le había pasado al Sr. Norberto. -Murió. -le contestó; sin mediar ninguna otra palabra que amortigüe la mala noticia.*

That Monday Patricio got on the train but did not find Norberto. Instead, a bearded and careless-looking man was in command of the locomotive. Patricio's intuition indicated that something was wrong. So Patricio approached to ask this man what had happened to Mr. Norberto. -Died; answered without mediating any other word that cushioned the bad news.

*Patricio se sintió afligido y se dirigió de nuevo a su asiento con un par de lágrimas en sus mejillas. La mujer que estaba del lado del pasillo, al lado de su asiento habitual, le preguntó si le pasaba algo. - Gracias, señora. Pero es lo único en la vida que no tiene solución. -le respondió Patricio secándose las lágrimas. No te sientas mal. -respondió la señora intentado que la situación volviera a la cotidianidad.*

Patrick felt distressed and he returned to his seat with a couple of tears on his cheeks. The woman on the aisle side, next to her usual seat, asked if something was wrong. Thank Mrs. But it is the only thing in life that has no solution. -Patricio replied wiping her tears. Do not be sad. - the lady answered tried that the situation returned to the daily life.

*Patricio se sentó a su lado, en el asiento de la ventana, y comenzó a observar el paisaje de Capilla del Monte y cómo este se iba moviendo a la velocidad de la locomotora. Sus ojos llorosos solo le permitían ver una fotografía borrosa. Al observar a través del vidrio, pudo ver la silueta de un hombre con el uniforme que siempre llevaba Norberto. La silueta se acercaba hacia el tren, como intentando alcanzarlo. Sus brazos se alzaban en el aire como si estuviera dirigiendo un avión.*

Patricio sat next to him, in the window seat, and began to observe the landscape of Capilla del Monte and how it was moving at the speed of the locomotive. His teary eyes only allowed him to see a blurry photograph. When he looked through the glass, he could see the silhouette of a man in the uniform that Norberto always wore. The silhouette was approaching the train, as if trying to reach it. His arms rose in the air as if he were directing a plane.

*Patricio no estaba seguro de que aquel hombre fuera Norberto, ya que ese uniforme lo había visto en muchas personas que trabajaban en la estación de trenes. De alguna u otra forma, Patricio sentía un dolor en el pecho. Era una sensación de disgusto, o un mareo fuerte que lo hacía sentirse inestable. ¿Te sientes bien? -le preguntó la mujer sentada a su lado. -Te ves pálido. No. Me duele el estómago y el pecho. -le respondió Patricio sin preocuparse por asustar a la mujer.*

Patricio was not sure that this man was Norberto, since that uniform had seen him in many people who worked at the train station. One way or another, Patricio felt a pain in his chest. It was a feeling of disgust, or a strong dizziness that made him feel unstable. Do you feel good? asked the woman sitting next to him. -You look pale. No. My stomach and chest hurt. -Patricio replied without worrying to scare the woman.

*Debe haber sido algo que comiste. -respondió la mujer con un tono robótico, como diciendo una respuesta automática. Esta frase era una*

*muletilla que hasta los médicos usaban cuando realmente no querían indagar en el problema real. Patricio se calmó un poco, pero se asustaba hasta con la mirada de cada pasajero. Su padre siempre le dijo que utilizara el cerebro antes que el corazón, pues el enamoramiento con su madre había resultado en una tragedia que podría haberse anticipado con el uso de una lógica sistemática.*

It must have been something you ate. - the woman answered with a robotic tone, as if saying an automatic answer. This phrase was a crutch that even doctors used when they really did not want to investigate the real problem. Patricio calmed down a bit, but he was scared even with the eyes of each passenger. His father always told him to use the brain rather than the heart, since falling in love with his mother had resulted in a tragedy that could have been anticipated with the use of systematic logic.

*Es por ello que Patricio intentó calmarse y analizar la situación. Norberto había muerto, y eso era un proceso natural. Pero, ¿por qué el nuevo chofer había respondido con tanta crudeza y poca sensibilidad? Es raro que un chofer del pueblo no conociera a Norberto lo suficiente como para lamentar su pérdida. En la siguiente parada, Patricio notó que una chica se bajó descompuesta del tren, pero un hombre se levantó del asiento a intentar ayudarla y le ofreció agua. La chica estaba temblando como si hubiera visto un fantasma.*

That is why Patricio tried to calm down and analyze the situation. Norberto had died, and that was a natural process. But why had the new driver responded so crudely and with little sensitivity? It's rare that a town driver didn't know Norberto enough to regret his loss. At the next stop, Patricio noticed that a girl got off the train, but a man got up from the seat to try to help her and offered her water. The girl was shaking as if she had seen a ghost.

*La chica se sentó con el hombre que le ofreció agua en el asiento que estaba al frente de Patricio. Patricio la miró a la cara y la chica le respondió en silencio. Tan solo se miraban. Sentían que no podían hablar mucho. Las dos personas que tenían a sus costados no parecían de confianza, por lo que cualquier palabra significaba un riesgo. Ambos se transmitían seguridad, pero... ¿qué estaba pasando? Existía un aire de*

*complicidad sobre el vagón. Si bien todos los indicios eran inconclusos, algo en el interior de ellos les decía que algo no estaba bien.*

The girl sat down with the man who offered her water in the seat that was in front of Patricio. Patricio looked at her face and the girl answered in silence. They just looked at each other. They felt they couldn't talk much. The two people at their sides did not seem trustworthy, so any word meant a risk. Both were transmitted security, but ... what was happening? There was an air of complicity over the car. While all the signs were inconclusive, something inside them told them that something was not right.

*Patricio solo tenía 15 años y sus padres no le permitían bajar del tren antes de su parada. Sin embargo, Patricio tenía muy claro que toda regla tenía al menos una excepción, y estas no habían sido aclaradas al mo. El tren comenzó a bajar la velocidad y a ese mismo ritmo el corazón de Patricio latía sincronizado con las pulsaciones de la chica que estaba al frente. El tren se detuvo en otra parada.*

Patricio was only 15 years old and his parents did not allow him to get off the train before his stop. However, Patricio was very clear that every rule had at least one exception, and these had not been clarified to the mo. The train began to slow down and at that same pace Patricio's heart beat in sync with the pulsations of the girl in front. The train stopped at another stop.

*Florencia, la chica que estaba al frente de él, se levantó de un golpe, tomó la mano de Patricio y se bajaron del tren corriendo. Nadie comprendía el apuro, pero otro pasajero notó que habían dejado atrás sus mochilas, por lo que las tomó y se bajó del tren con ellas para devolverlas.*

Florencia, the girl in front of him, jumped up, took Patricio's hand and got off the train running. No one understood the trouble, but another passenger noticed that they had left their backpacks, so he took them and got off the train with them to return them.

*Al momento de bajarse, las puertas del tren se cerraron y este siguió su camino. El pasajero que se había bajado se sentía muy desesperado porque había tenido intenciones de volver a subir al vagón. Florencia y Patricio seguían sin mediar palabras. El pasajero se quejó y los miró como si ellos tuvieran la culpa de algo. Ambos le agradecieron y lo abrazaron. Allí abrazaban a un desconocido en la estación de un pueblo que no conocían.*

*Patricio intentó hablar, pero al abrir su boca una explosión se escucha desde lo lejos en la dirección que había seguido el tren. La onda expansiva tiró a los tres al piso. Al levantarse vieron una columna de humo que se extendía desde unos pocos kilómetros de donde ellos se encontraban.*

When he got off, the train doors closed and he continued on his way. The passenger who had gotten off felt very desperate because he had intended to get back into the car. Florencia and Patricio were still speechless. The passenger complained and looked at them as if they were to blame for something. Both thanked him and hugged him. There they hugged a stranger at the station of a town they didn't know. Patricio tried to speak, but when he opened his mouth an explosion was heard from afar in the direction that the train had followed. The shock wave threw the three to the floor. When they got up they saw a column of smoke that extended from a few kilometers from where they were.

*La policía detuvo a los tres en la comisaría más cercana para declarar. Cada uno contó su anécdota, pero ninguno de los detectives que los entrevistaron parecía creerles. Los tres jóvenes habían quedado como cómplices de una tragedia. Desde las noticias en la radio que se escuchaba de fondo en la comisaría se oía sobre un presunto ataque terrorista. Los tres pasajeros no sabían en qué estaban metidos, solo sabían que eran inocentes.*

Police arrested all three at the nearest police station to testify. Each one told their anecdote, but none of the detectives who interviewed them seemed to believe them. The three young men had been complicit in a tragedy. From the news on the radio that was heard in the background at the police station, one heard about an alleged terrorist attack. The three passengers did not know what they were involved in, they only knew they were innocent.

*Al cabo de unas horas de estar arrestados, un policía se acerca y libera a Ramón, el pasajero que se había bajado a llevar sus mochilas. ¿Por qué Patricio y Florencia seguían detenidos? Yo solo seguí mis instintos. -le confiesa Patricio a Florencia. - ¿Acaso fuimos cómplices de una tragedia? Digo, de alguna forma sabíamos que algo estaba mal pero no dijimos nada. No podíamos decir nada. Esas dos personas que estaban con nosotros sabían algo e intentaban detenernos. Ellos sí sabían algo. -le respondió Florencia.*

After a few hours of being arrested, a police officer approaches and releases Ramón, the passenger who had come down to carry his backpacks. Why were Patricio and Florencia still detained? I just followed my instincts. - Patricio confesses to Florence. - Were we complicit in a tragedy? I mean, we somehow knew something was wrong but we didn't say anything. We could not say anything. Those two people who were with us knew something and tried to stop us. They did know something. - Florence replied.

*La razón por la cual nosotros bajamos del tren no es menos válida que la que ellos ocultaban. Eso es lo que yo creo. De alguna forma estamos mintiendo, ¿no? -dijo Patricio, y sin esperar respuesta de Florencia, llamó al policía de guardia para avisarle que tenía algo que confesar. El detective llegó en unos minutos y ambos firmaron una declaración.*

The reason we got off the train is no less valid than the one they hid. That's what I think. Somehow we are lying, right? -Patricio said, and without waiting for an answer from Florence, he called the police on duty to let him know that he had something to confess. The detective arrived in a few minutes and they both signed a statement.

*Gracias. Ya pueden ir a sus casas. -el detective confirmó la veracidad de sus declaraciones y los dejó volver a sus casas. Al llegar a la casa de su padre, Patricio lo abrazó y su padre le dijo - -Gracias por no obedecerme. Quiero que confíes en tu corazón siempre.*

Thank you. They can now go to their homes. -the detective confirmed the truthfulness of his statements and let them return to their homes. Upon arriving at his father's house, Patricio hugged him and his father said - - Thanks for not obeying me. I want you to trust your heart always.

## Quiz

1. ¿Qué medio de transporte tomó Patricio de Capilla del Monte a San Juan?
  - a. Entrenar
  - b. Taxi
  - c. Avión
2. ¿Dónde vivía el padre de Patricio?
  - a. Capilla del Monte
  - b. San Diego
  - c. San Juan
3. ¿Qué edad tenía Patricio cuando no se le permitió bajar del tren solo?
  - a. sesenta y cinco
  - b. 15
  - c. 10
4. ¿Cómo se llamaba la niña en el tren?
  - a. Norberto
  - b. Florencia
  - c. Gracia

## Answers

1. a
2. b
3. b
4. b

## Vocabulary / Vocabulario

- *acercó* --- got closer
- *afligido* --- afflicted
- *agua* --- water
- *al frente* --- in front
- *alcanzarlo* --- reach it
- *amortigüe* --- cushion
- *anécdota* --- anecdote
- *apuro* --- hurry
- *arrestados* --- arrested
- *asiento* --- seat
- *aspecto* --- appearance
- *asustar* --- frighten
- *avión* --- airplane
- *ayudarla* --- help her
- *bajar* --- get down
- *bajar* --- slow down
- *barbudo* --- bearded
- *boca* --- mouth
- *borrosa* --- blurred
- *brazos* --- arms
- *buen hombre* --- good man
- *calidez* --- warmth
- *calmarse* --- calm down
- *camino* --- path
- *cara* --- face
- *cerebro* --- brain
- *cómplices de crimen* - partners in crime



- *complicidad* --- complicity
- *confesar* --- confess
- *corazón* --- heart
- *corriendo* --- running
- *costados* --- sides
- *cotidianeidad* --- everydayness
- *crudeza* --- rawness
- *cuidaba* --- took care
- *De alguna u otra forma* --- One way or another
- *de confianza* --- trustworthy
- *de fondo* --- background
- *de un golpe* --- suddenly
- *declaración* --- declaration
- *descompuesta* --- sick
- *desconocido* --- unknown
- *descuidado* --- neglected
- *desesperado* --- desperate
- *detective* --- detective
- *devolverlas* --- give them back
- *disgust* --- dislike
- *dolor* --- pain
- *enamoramiento* --- infatuation
- *entrevistaron* --- interviewed
- *esmero* --- care
- *estación* --- station
- *estómago* --- stomach
- *explosión* --- explosion
- *fantasma* --- ghost

- *firmaron* --- signed
- *fotografía* --- photography
- *frase* --- phrase
- *Gracias* - Thank you
- *había pasado* --- had happened
- *habían dejado atrás* --- they had left behind
- *habitual* --- frequent
- *hablar* --- to talk
- *hubiera visto* --- had seen
- *humo* --- smoke
- *inconclusos* --- inconclusive
- *indagar* --- Inquire
- *indicaba* – indicated
- *indicios* --- clues
- *inestable* --- unstable
- *interior* --- inside
- *intuición* --- intuition
- *lágrimas* --- tears
- *latir* – to beat
- *libera* --- free
- *llorosos* --- tearful
- *locomotora* --- locomotive
- *mareo* --- dizziness
- *mediar* – mediate
- *mejillas* --- cheeks
- *meses* --- months
- *mintiendo* --- lying
- *mirada* --- look

- *mochilas* --- backpacks
- *moviendo* --- moving
- *muletilla* --- tag
- *murió* --- died
- *noticia* – news
- *obedecerme* --- obey me
- *observar* --- see
- *ocultaban* --- hid
- *ofreció* --- offered
- *ojos* --- eyes
- *pálido* --- pale
- *parade* --- stop
- *pasajero* --- passenger
- *pasillo* --- passage
- *pecho* --- chest
- *policía* --- police

## 14. Ella Siempre Me Supera.

*Conozco a una chica desde pequeños; al ser mi vecina nos criamos prácticamente juntos. Todos los días jugábamos juntos.*

I've known a girl since childhood; being my neighbor we grew up practically together. Every day we played together.

*¿Cómo llegué a tener una relación de amistad con ella? Pues la respuesta es simple.*

How did I get to have a friendship with her? Well, the answer is simple.

– ¡Se mi amigo! – Gritó enfrente de mí.

- Be my friend! – shouted in front of me.

*No la conocía para ese entonces, era la primera vez que nos mirábamos. Tenía alrededor de unos seis años. Solamente conocía que ella era mi vecina, pero nada más allá de eso.*

I didn't know her at that time, it was the first time we looked at each other. He was about six years old. I only knew that she was my neighbor, but nothing more than that.

*Por supuesto no supe cómo responder a su pedido; uno no simplemente se lanza y le pide a otra persona que formen una amistad. En lo absoluto. Era vergonzoso, pero ella... ¡Sonreía! Sonreía con una gracia que se contagiaba.*

Of course, I did not know how to respond to your request; one does not simply launch and ask another person to form a friendship. At all. It was embarrassing, but she... was smiling! He smiled with a grace that was spread.

*A la pura vista se podía notar que ella era una de esas chicas energéticas que siempre está feliz y jugando. Yo por otro lado era... un poco más apático. No era como si me desagradara, como dije antes, no la conocía. Simplemente... no sentía la misma emoción que ella.*

In plain glance you could tell that she was one of those energetic girls who is always happy and playing. I, on the other hand was ... a little more apathetic. It wasn't like I disliked it, as I said before, I didn't know her. I just ... didn't feel the same emotion as her.

– *¿Por qué? – Le pregunté sin pensarlo.*

- Why? - I asked without thinking.

*No buscaba ser grosero o alejarla, solo... me interesaba saber el por qué me buscaba a mí en específico.*

I was not looking to be rude or away, just ... I was interested to know why he was looking for me specifically.

– *No hay más niños en esta calle. – Me respondió sin perder su sonrisa. – Y parece que también quieres divertirte, así que juguemos. –*

- There are no more children in this street. - He answered without losing his smile. - And it seems that you also want to have fun, so let's play. -

*Ciertamente no tenía amigos en aquel entonces, y no era un problema. Aun no comenzaba a ir a la escuela, y como ella lo había dicho, no había más niños en esa calle. Pero aun así... la idea de jugar junto a una niña... usualmente no era lo común.*

I certainly had no friends at the time, and it wasn't a problem. I wasn't going to school yet, and as she had said, there were no more children in that street. But even so ... the idea of playing with a girl ... was usually not common.

– *No creo que quieras jugar conmigo. – Le respondí. – Yo no juego con muñecas como tú, tampoco a la casita o cosas así. –*

- I don't think you want to play with me. - I replied. - I don't play with dolls like you, or the house or things like that. -

– *¡Yo tampoco! – Respondió.*

- Me neither! - Answered.

*Me tomó de la mano y me estiró con fuerza.*

He took me by the hand and stretched me hard.

– Juaguemos a las escondidas. – Me dijo. – Esta vez yo cuento, anda a esconderte. –

- Let's play hide and seek. - He told me. - This time I count, go hide. -

*Era como si ignorara todos los peros que pusiera y tomara únicamente las partes donde yo aceptaba, las cuales no eran ninguna.*

It was as if he ignored all the buts, and took only what I accepted.

*Se puso en la pared y comenzó a contar. Para ese momento una idea pasó por mi cabeza - "Vuelve a casa" Nadie me podía obligar a estar ahí con ella, bueno, quizá mamá o papá lo hubieran hecho, pero ellos no estaban ahí. Podía simplemente abandonarla en lo que ella contaba y volver a la comodidad de casa. Pero...*

He got on the wall and started counting. By that time an idea went through my head - "Go back home" No one could force me to be there with her, well, maybe mom or dad would have done it, but they weren't there. He could simply abandon her in what she told and return to the comfort of home. But...

*Terminé escondiéndome no muy lejos de ahí. Sentí que volver a casa no era lo correcto, aun si solo era un niño egoísta, tenía un corazón y una conciencia, la cual me estaría matando por dejarla ahí después de estar tan animada respecto al jugar.*

I ended up hiding not far from there. I felt that returning home was not the right thing, even if I was just a selfish child, I had a heart and a conscience, which would be killing me by leaving it there after being so animated about playing.

*Pasaron los minutos, cada vez se hacía más tarde. Ella no me encontraba, me comencé a preguntar si era que me había escondido muy bien... o quizá ella se aburría. Si me dejó ahí. No hubiera sido extraño, después de todo, yo me había negado muchas veces y quizá eso la cansó. Pensé que quizá lo hacía para darme una lección.*

The minutes passed, each time it was later. She was not there; I began to wonder if it was that I had hidden very well ... or maybe she got bored. If he left me there. It would not have been strange, after all, I had refused many

times and maybe that tired her. I thought maybe I was doing it to teach me a lesson.

*Pero entonces, miré nuevamente su rostro.*

But then, I looked at his face again.

– ¡Te encontré! – Gritó llena de alegría.

- I found you! - He shouted full of joy.

*Sentí como si esas palabras tuvieran más de un significado. No solo me había encontrado de mi escondite, sino...*

I felt as if those words had more than one meaning. Not only had I found myself in my hiding place, but ...

*Algo movió mi corazón, y por primera vez en mucho tiempo, pude sonreír también de felicidad.*

Something moved my heart, and for the first time in a long time, I could also smile with happiness.

*Nuestra amistad de afinó con el tiempo. Resultó que terminamos en la misma escuela primaria, en la misma aula, y sentados uno al lado del otro.*

Our friendship refined over time. It turned out that we ended up in the same elementary school, in the same classroom, and sitting next to each other.

*Aquello hizo llevadera la escuela, ella siempre hacia algo entretenido o me contaba cosas extrañas. Regularmente la regañaban por no callarse en clase. Pero aun así volvía a contarme más y más cosas.*

That made the school bearable, she always did something entertaining or told me strange things. They regularly scolded her for not shutting up in class. But still he told me more and more things.

*Secundaria también estuvimos juntos; éramos inseparables. Al lugar que ella fuera, yo también estaba ahí.*

High school we were together too; We were inseparable. Wherever she went, I was there too.

*Seguía siendo mi vecina, por lo que frecuentaba mucho mi casa. Mi madre la adoraba, y mi padre daba indirectas de que yo ya estaba creciendo y que estaba orgulloso de mi.*

It was still my neighbor, so I frequented my house a lot. My mother loved her, and my father gave hints that I was already growing up and that he was proud of me.

*Muchos de los comentarios los ignoraba. Lo único que hacíamos era... jugar en mi habitación, mirar películas, leer algunos comics; se convirtió en mi mejor amigo.*

Many of the comments ignored them. All we did was ... play in my room, watch movies, read some comics; He became my best friend.

*Aquello no duró mucho. Las cosas comenzaron a cambiar, y ella lo notó. Muchos hablaban de nosotros a las espaldas. De que era extraña la relación que llevábamos, que no estaban del todo seguros si un hombre y una mujer se podían llevar tan bien. Y ella dio el siguiente paso.*

That did not last long. Things began to change, and she noticed. Many talked about us behind our backs. That the relationship we were having was strange, that they were not entirely sure if a man and a woman could get along so well. And she took the next step.

*– Prácticamente ya lo somos, ¿no? – Me preguntó energética como siempre.*

- Practically we already are, right? - He asked me energetically as always.

*– ¿A qué te refieres? – Le pregunté.*

- What do you mean? - Asked.

*– ¡Somos pareja! – Respondió tomando la delantera.*

- We're Couple! - He responded by taking the lead.

*– ¿¡Lo somos!?! – Aquello me sorprendió.*

- We are!?! - That surprised me.

*Pero viendo la relación que llevábamos, era comprensible. Todos a nuestro alrededor lo pensaban igual. Entonces... solo debíamos hacerlo "Formal".*



*Ella no me desagradaba en lo absoluto, disfrutaba estar con ella todo el tiempo. Me entendía mejor que nadie más, y creía yo también lo hacía.*

But seeing the relationship we had, it was understandable. Everyone around us thought the same. So ... we just had to do it "Formal." She didn't dislike me at all, I enjoyed being with her all the time. He understood me better than anyone else, and I thought I did too.

*Una vez más... me superó. Tomó las riendas y dijo lo que yo no hubiera podido decir.*

– *¿Algo cambiara? – Le pregunté.*

Once again ... it surpassed me. He took the reins and said what I could not have said.

- Will something change? - Asked.

*Nunca tuvimos una pareja, por lo que no comprendíamos que era serlo.*

We never had a partner, so we didn't understand what it was.

– *No lo creo. – Respondió alegre. – Solo que así puedo decir felizmente que te quiero. –*

- I do not think so. - He replied cheerfully. - Only that way I can happily say that I love you. -

*Decía las cosas más vergonzosas sin pensárselo. Pero eso no me desagradaba.*

He said the most embarrassing things without thinking about it. But that didn't displease me.

*Llegamos a preparatoria. Nuevamente fuimos a la misma. Seguíamos siendo pareja de lo más normal. Bueno, quizá no tan normal. Parecíamos hermanos o amigos por cómo nos comportábamos. Pero no había otra forma de hacerlo, siempre estuvo a mi lado, la confianza estaba a otro nivel. Bromear con ella de cualquier cosa era el pan de cada día.*

We arrived at high school. Again, we went to it. We were still the most normal couple. Well, maybe not so normal. We looked like brothers or friends because of how we behaved. But there was no other way to do it, he

was always by my side, trust was on another level. Joking with her about anything was the daily bread.

*Elegimos la misma universidad, la misma carrera. A ambos nos gustaban las mismas cosas, queríamos estudiar lo mismo y trabajar juntos en los proyectos que teníamos a futuro.*

We choose the same university, the same career. We both liked the same things, we wanted to study the same and work together on the projects we had in the future.

*Lo que me llevó a pensar que quizá... me faltaba dar un paso más allá. Ella dio los primeros dos; ella forjó nuestra amistad, ella inicio nuestra relación. Y al pensar en mi futuro, ella siempre estaba ahí. Yo... quería ser el que diera el siguiente paso.*

Which led me to think that maybe ... I had to go one step further. She gave the first two; She forged our friendship; she started our relationship. And when thinking about my future, she was always there. I ... wanted to be the one to take the next step.

*El día de la graduación llegó. Nos graduamos con honores, éramos el equipo dinamita. Nada nos podía detener.*

Graduation day arrived. We graduated with honors; we were the dynamite team. Nothing could stop us.

*Era hora de comenzar la vida adulta. Y aun ella no daba el siguiente paso. Quizá... ella no lo quería dar. Comencé a dudar, aun si yo quería darlo, quizá ella en realidad no. Quizá estaba aburrida de nuestra relación y quería terminarlo.*

It was time to start adult life. And even she didn't take the next step. Maybe ... she didn't want to give it. I started to doubt, even if I wanted to give it, maybe she didn't really. Maybe I was bored of our relationship and wanted to end it.

*Pero por más que intentaba mirar un futuro sin ella... me era imposible. La conocí desde pequeña y nunca se apartó de mi lado. Quería decírselo, que quería nuestra vida nunca se separara. Aun si ella no lo miraba de la misma forma... no quería guardar esos sentimientos.*

But as much as I tried to look at a future without her ... it was impossible. I knew her since I was little and she never left my side. He wanted to tell her, that he wanted our life never to separate. Even if she didn't look at him the same way ... she didn't want to save those feelings.

– *Yo... quería pedirte algo. – Le dije.*

- I ... wanted to ask you something. - I told.

– *¿Qué podría ser? – Preguntó confundida.*

- What could it be? - Asked confused.

*Tome el valor que me faltaba. Era el momento. Esta vez yo... sería quien daría el siguiente paso, no quería que ella me superara una vez más.*

Take the courage I was missing. It was the moment. This time I ... would be the one to take the next step, I didn't want her to beat me once more.

– *Lo he estado pensando durante un largo tiempo... quizá tu no sientes lo mismo, pero yo... en verdad lo quiero. – Dije. – Han sido unos largos años, y no los cambiaría para nada. Has alegrado mi vida de una forma que no te puedes imaginar, y por lo mismo... quiero que estés en todo lo que está por venir. Por favor... ¡CASATE CONMIGO! –*

- I've been thinking about it for a long time ... maybe you don't feel the same, but I ... I really want it. - Said. – Many years have passed, and I wouldn't change them at all. You have brightened my life in a way that you cannot imagine, and for the same ... I want you to be in everything that is to come. Please... marry me! -

*Con una expresión de sorpresa, quedó en silencio.*

With an expression of surprise, he fell silent.

*Pensé que quizá, después de todo, ella no...*

I thought maybe, after all, she didn't ...

– *¿No lo estábamos ya? – Preguntó confundida.*

- Weren't we already? - Asked confused.

– *¿Eh? – No comprendí su respuesta.*

- Eh? - I didn't understand your answer.

– *Me adelante un poco y rente un departamento. – Me dijo. – ¡Por supuesto que yo también quiero que estés en mi futuro! –*

- Go ahead a little and rent an apartment. - He told me. - Of course I want you to be in my future too! -

*¿Un departamento? Ella... yo... no pude aguantar las lágrimas de felicidad.*

A department? She ... I ... I couldn't stand the tears of happiness.

*Una vez más... ella... me superó.*

Once again ... she ... beat me.

– *Me alegro de haberte encontrado... –*

- I'm glad to have found you... -

## Quiz

1. Nosotros - con la chica del barrio.

- a. Jugó
- b. Cantó
- c. Escolarizado

2. ¿Qué edad tenía la niña cuando nos miramos por primera vez?

- a. 15
- b. 10
- c. 2

3. ¿Por qué fue difícil conseguir un futuro sin ella?

- a. La conocía desde que era pequeña
- b. No pude conseguir a nadie
- c. Ella me amaba

## Answers

- 1. a
- 2. a.

3.a

## **Vocabulario/Vocabulary**

- *relación* --- friendship
- *Gritó* --- shouted
- *Vecina* --- neighbor
- *Vergonzoso* --- embarrassing
- *Grosero* --- rude
- *Tampoco* --- neither
- *Contar* --- counting
- *Abandonarla* --- abandon
- *Significado* --- meaning
- *Cambiar* --- change

## 15. La Muerte Los Sigue

*La autopista estaba vacía, no había ningún signo de algún automóvil o camión cerca. Las luces se encendían y apagaban. A la distancia, una tormenta iluminaba la noche, y el viento comenzaba a mover las copas de los árboles violentamente. Las primeras gotas comenzaron a mojar el pavimento. En medio de la carretera tres jóvenes corrían desesperados saliendo del bosque sin razón alguna. El terror se reflejaba en sus rostros y ellos no podían hacer otra cosa que correr y gritar.*

The highway was empty, there was no sign of a car or truck nearby. The lights turned on and off. In the distance, a storm illuminated the night, and the wind began to move the treetops violently. The first drops began to wet the pavement. In the middle of the road three young men ran desperately out of the forest for no reason. Terror was reflected on their faces and they could do nothing but run and scream.

*De pronto, los tres jóvenes cayeron muertos sin ningún signo de violencia. En sus caras se podía ver la sorpresa de quien no esperaba que la muerte llegue tan rápido. Tenían futuro, un trabajo y toda una vida por delante, pero ahora sus cuerpos estaban en la carretera. Los animales del bosque cercano miraban a la distancia a esas tres posibles presas, pero sabían muy bien que entrar en el bosque podía significar la muerte. Cada vez que alguien cruzaba las cuevas del bosque moría, estar mucho tiempo en ellas era fatal.*

Suddenly, the three young men fell dead without any sign of violence. On their faces you could see the surprise of those who did not expect death to arrive so quickly. They had a future, a job and a lifetime ahead, but now their bodies were on the road. The animals of the nearby forest looked at the distance to those three possible preys, but knew very well that entering the forest could mean death. Every time someone crossed the forest caves died, being in them for a long time was fatal.

*Al día siguiente con la tormenta ya muy lejos y todos los signos ya secos y olvidados, la policía rodeaba la escena del crimen, marcaban con tiza el borde de los cuerpos y sacaban fotografías a todo lo que parecía interesante o digno de investigación. Como siempre sucedía en estos casos,*

*los camiones de noticias estaban alrededor tratando de sacar la mejor imagen de los cuerpos y luego emitirla en el horario principal. Los periodistas trataban de sacarle información a los policías, quienes estaban bajo un estricto pacto de silencio. No es que no tenían información, solo que lo mejor en estos casos era esperar que algún vocero o representante de la fuerza policíaca hiciera declaraciones cuando tuviese todos los datos.*

The next day with the storm far away and all the signs already dry and forgotten, the police surrounded the crime scene, marked with chalk the edge of the bodies and took photographs of everything that seemed interesting or worthy of investigation. As always happened in these cases, news trucks were around trying to get the best image of the bodies and then broadcast it at the main time. The journalists tried to get information from the police, who were under a strict pact of silence. Not that they had no information, only that the best thing in these cases was to wait for a spokesman or a police force representative to make statements when he had all the data.

*Sin embargo, a pesar de los mejores intentos de la policía, no podían encontrar ninguna pista o ningún motivo por el cual tres cuerpos jóvenes estaban en la carretera sin signos de violencia. Sin ningún tipo de solución a la vista, el fiscal que llevaba el caso decidió tragar su orgullo y llamar a un viejo conocido - El detective McHeartley.*

However, despite the best attempts by the police, they could not find any clue or any reason why three young bodies were on the road without signs of violence. Without any solution in sight, the prosecutor who was carrying the case decided to swallow his pride and call an old acquaintance - Detective McHeartley.

*En su oficina el detective estaba descansando, sus pies apoyados encima del escritorio, cerca de una caja de pizza sucia y vacía. En el sillón su gato descansaba, durmiendo encima del sombrero y en una esquina su fiel chaqueta estaba colgada del perchero. Era una tarde tranquila de domingo y el detective no tenía ninguna tarea que hacer. De hecho, ni siquiera tenía un hogar al que volver, excepto esa oficina donde dormía, trabajaba y vivía toda la semana. En medio de la tranquilidad, sonó el teléfono. El ruido hizo que tanto el detective como su mascota se despertaran asustados. Desesperado, el detective atendió rápidamente el teléfono, él sabía que en*



*un caso de investigación cada segundo es importante. “¿Hola? ¿Quién es?” prácticamente gritó al auricular “Sí, soy yo. ¿Dónde? Estoy a doce horas de distancia en autobús. No lo sé, tengo otros planes para hoy”. Su gato lo miró con cara de fastidio. “¿Me van a pagar un avión privado? Bueno, está bien, allí estaré”.*

In his office the detective was resting, his feet resting on the desk, near a dirty and empty pizza box. In the armchair his cat was resting, sleeping on top of the hat and in one corner his faithful jacket was hanging from the coat rack. It was a quiet Sunday afternoon and the detective had no homework to do. In fact, he didn't even have a home to return to, except that office where he slept, worked and lived all week. Amid the tranquility, the telephone rang. The noise caused both the detective and his pet to wake up scared. Desperate, the detective quickly answered the phone, he knew that in an investigation case every second is important. "Hello? Who is it?" He practically shouted at the headset "Yes, it's me. Where? I am twelve hours away by bus. I don't know, I have other plans for today." His cat looked at him with annoyed face. "Will they pay me a private plane? Well, that's fine, I'll be there."

*Tomó su chaqueta, su portafolio y para conseguir su sombrero tuvo que pedirle por favor a su gato que se moviera de encima de él. “Por favor, tengo que irme”. Finalmente, después de darle una mirada asesina el gato se movió de encima del sombrero. “Te prometo que te traeré algo de regreso. ¿Atún? ¿Pollo? ¿Qué te parece?”. El gato lo miró, solo apoyó su cabeza en la mano del detective para indicarle que podía irse en paz. “La vecina tiene las llaves, así que ella va a cuidarte un rato”.*

He took his jacket, his wallet and to get his hat he had to ask his cat to move on top of him. "Please, I have to go." Finally, after giving him a murderous look the cat moved from above the hat. "I promise I will bring you something back. Tuna? Chicken? How about?". The cat looked at him, just rested his head on the detective's hand to indicate that he could leave in peace. "The neighbor has the keys, so she will take care of you for a while."

*Rápidamente se dirigió al aeropuerto donde lo esperaban los representantes de la policía y subieron todos a un avión privado. Mientras estaba en vuelo, McHeartley tuvo la posibilidad de leer toda la información del caso. Vio todas las fotos y toda la información recopilada por los*

*incansables miembros de la fuerza policíaca. Otro extraño caso. Era el tipo de caso que seguía al detective, el último caso fue en el fin del mundo y fue bastante particular. No podía sacarse de encima la sensación de que este caso no iba a ser tan simple como ese.*

He quickly went to the airport where police representatives were waiting for him and all got on a private plane. While in flight, McHeartley had the ability to read all the information in the case. He saw all the photos and all the information collected by the tireless members of the police force.

Another strange case. It was the kind of case that followed the detective, the last case was at the end of the world and it was quite particular. He could not get rid of the feeling that this case was not going to be as simple as that.

*Al aterrizar, los policías lo subieron a un coche patrulla, y fueron hacia la escena del crimen. Los periodistas y el alcalde estaban esperándolo, visiblemente nerviosos. Las elecciones eran en una semana y si el alcalde no resolvía el problema con rapidez posiblemente perdería todos los votos. El alcalde recibió con manos temblorosas al detective McHeartley y lo guio hacia una carpa de la policía donde se llevaba a cabo toda la coordinación de la investigación.*

Upon landing, the policemen put him on a patrol car, and went to the crime scene. The journalists and the mayor were waiting for him, visibly nervous. The elections were in a week and if the mayor did not solve the problem quickly he would probably lose all the votes. The mayor greeted Detective McHeartley with trembling hands and guided him to a police tent where all the coordination of the investigation was carried out.

*Dentro de la carpa había una mesa blanca, una silla y copias de todas las fotos que ya había visto en el viaje hacia la escena del crimen. También tenía encima de la pila un sobre marrón que decía "Informe Forense". McHeartley lo abrió, esperando encontrar la respuesta rápido y volver a su oficina, pero en realidad era una sola hoja con un texto debajo que decía "No hay información suficiente para llegar a una conclusión, tan solo se hallaron huellas, estuvieron caminando durante tres días seguidos". El detective suspiró. Iba a ser una larga noche. Llamó a un asistente, pidió el café más negro que pudieran encontrar para mantenerse despierto.*

Inside the tent was a white table, a chair and copies of all the photos he had already seen on the trip to the crime scene. He also had a brown envelope on top of the stack that said "Forensic Report." McHeartley opened it, hoping to find the quick answer and return to his office but in reality it was a single sheet with a text below that said "There is not enough information to reach a conclusion, only footprints were found, they were walking for three days straight " The detective sighed. It was going to be a long night. He called an assistant, asked for the blackest coffee they could find to stay awake.

*Afuera, la prensa estaba atenta a cada movimiento. Después de todo, no todos los días el detective McHeartley, el héroe del caso del avión perdido, visitaba la ciudad. Y ciertamente esto significa que era un caso muy importante. Las horas pasaban y por supuesto, los ánimos eran bastante malos. Después de todo, cuando se transmite las 24 horas del día la misma noticia queda realmente muy poco que informar si no hay noticias nuevas. Pasaron días llenos de tensión, todos se sorprendían porque el detective contrató a especialistas de todo tipo para investigar la zona donde encontraron muertos a los jóvenes, así como informes de muertes extrañas en el pasado que hubiesen ocurrido en el pueblo.*

Outside, the press was attentive to every movement. After all, not every day Detective McHeartley, the hero of the lost plane case, visited the city. And this certainly means that it was a very important case. The hours passed and of course, the moods were pretty bad. After all, when the news is broadcast 24 hours a day, the same news is really very little to report if there is no new news. They spent days full of tension, everyone was surprised because the detective hired specialists of all kinds to investigate the area where they found the young people dead, as well as reports of strange deaths in the past that had occurred in the town.

*En cuanto el detective McHeartley, llamó a conferencia de prensa en la puerta de la carpa. Todos los periodistas agradecieron esas noticias nuevas, ya que significaba que al menos el final la tortura estaba cerca. Finalmente podrían saber qué había pasado con los tres cuerpos, quién era el culpable, y en particular qué pasos se tomarían para apresarlos porque las personas de ese pueblo adoraban el drama. Sin embargo, lo que los recibió no fue exactamente lo que esperaban.*

As soon as Detective McHeartley called a press conference at the door of the tent. All the journalists thanked those new news, since it meant that at least the end was near torture. Finally, they could know what had happened to the three bodies, who was the guilty, and in particular what steps would be taken to capture him because the people of that town adored the drama. However, what received them was not exactly what they expected.

*“Hola, buenas tardes”, dijo McHeartley frente al micrófono instalado en un atril . “Los llamé a conferencia de prensa porque sé exactamente qué pasó con los cuerpos de los jóvenes. Sin embargo...”, hizo una pausa que duró años, “creo que no es lo que ustedes esperaban escuchar”.*

"Hello, good afternoon," McHeartley said in front of the microphone installed in a music stand. "I called them to a press conference because I know exactly what happened to the bodies of the young people. However, ... "He paused for years," I think it's not what you expected to hear. "

*Los periodistas estaban en el borde de sus asientos. McHeartley continuó, “los tres jóvenes no fueron asesinados por naves espaciales, o por agentes secretos del FBI o cualquiera de esas teorías conspirativas que se comentaron mucho en la prensa en estos días. Los tres jóvenes murieron intoxicados y según las huellas estuvieron corriendo alrededor de tres días”. El Alcalde no pudo detener su lengua y dijo “¿Quién lo ha hecho Señor detective? ¡Esto es un hecho siniestro! Deberíamos suspender las elecciones” gritó para que el candidato adversario no le ganara.*

The journalists were on the edge of their seats. McHeartley continued, “The three young men were not killed by spacecraft, or by secret FBI agents or any of those conspiracy theories that were widely discussed in the press these days. The three young people died intoxicated and according to the tracks they were running for about three days.” The Mayor was unable to stop his tongue and said “Who has done it Lord detective? This is a sinister fact! We should suspend the elections,” he shouted so that the opposing candidate would not win.

*“¿Usted piensa suspender las elecciones porque el culpable de la muerte de los jóvenes fue un hongo?” preguntó McHeartley enfadado porque lo había interrumpido.*

"Do you plan to suspend the elections because the culprit in the death of the youth was a fungus?" McHeartley said angrily because he had interrupted him.

*Silencio en la sala. La noticia fue tan fuerte que se podía sentir el silencio en los hogares donde las familias y curiosos seguían la transmisión. "Así es ¡sorpréndanse! Los tres murieron intoxicados por un hongo maligno que se encuentra en el bosque de este pueblo", añadió tristemente. "Me pareció extraño que unos jóvenes tan sanos murieran sin signos de violencia, así que pensé que fueron envenenados por algo y analicé todas las plantas del bosque que está cerca de la carretera. Efectivamente la prueba del hongo mortal dio positiva".*

Silence in the room. The news was so strong that silence could be felt in homes where families and curious people followed the transmission. "That's right, surprise yourself! The three died intoxicated by an evil fungus found in the forest of this town," he added sadly. "It seemed strange to me that such healthy young people died without signs of violence, so I thought they were poisoned by something and analyzed all the plants in the forest near the road. Indeed, the deadly fungus test was positive."

*Un periodista tuvo mucha curiosidad al respecto y dijo - "Entonces ¿Por qué según las huellas estuvieron corriendo alrededor de tres días seguidos? ¡Me parece que algo más tuvo que haberlos perseguido!". McHeartley lo miró fijamente, "Lo único que los siguió fue la muerte. Verá mi querido reportero, cuando alguien consume un hongo tóxico la persona alucina, cada quien a su manera. Pudieron estar perdiendo la cabeza poco a poco. Los tres jóvenes comenzaron a perder la respiración cuando estaban en lo profundo del bosque e intentaron salir a la civilización. Los tres estaban de campamento y posiblemente entraron a las cuevas del bosque que están infectadas con el hongo". El silencio fue increíble en la sala de conferencias. "Lamentablemente", añadió con un poco de tristeza, "si hubieran llevado algún teléfono de emergencia, esto se podría haber solucionado porque los efectos del hongo se eliminan con una inyección para las alergias". El alcalde miraba del otro lado de la sala de conferencias sin poder creerlo. Todo indicaba que el detective McHeartley era tan eficiente como se decía. Los rastros del veneno del hongo habían estado matando a muchas personas en medio del bosque.*

A journalist was very curious about it and said - "Then why, according to the tracks, were they running for about three days in a row? It seems to me that something else must have pursued them!" McHeartley stared at him, "The only thing that followed them was death. You will see my dear reporter, when someone consumes a toxic mushroom the person hallucinates, each in his own way. They could be losing their heads little by little. The three young men began to lose their breath when they were deep in the forest and tried to go out to civilization. All three were camping and possibly entered the caves of the forest that are infected with the fungus." The silence was incredible in the conference room. "Unfortunately," he added with a bit of sadness, "if they had taken an emergency phone, this could have been solved because the effects of the fungus are eliminated with an allergy injection." The mayor looked across the conference room without being able to believe it. Everything indicated that Detective McHeartley was as efficient as he said. Traces of the fungus poison had been killing many people in the middle of the forest.

*Ahora el alcalde estaba sin posibilidades de ganar las elecciones. Todo era culpa del bajo presupuesto, la falta de entrenamiento y de los muy bajos sueldos que pagaba a los guardabosques. Como pudo, trató de escapar, para no verse arrinconado por la prensa.*

Now the mayor was unable to win the elections. It was all the fault of the low budget, the lack of training and the very low salaries he paid to the rangers. As he could, he tried to escape, so as not to be cornered by the press.

*El detective se bajó del atril y procedió a buscar su chaqueta y su sombrero. Otro caso resuelto, pensó. Antes de coger el autobús hacia el aeropuerto le compró 10 latas de atún a su gato como se lo había dicho antes de irse de casa porque el detective McHeartley era un hombre que hacía todo lo que prometía.*

The detective got off the lectern and proceeded to look for his jacket and his hat. Another case resolved, he thought. Before catching the bus to the airport, he bought 10 cans of tuna from his cat as he had said before leaving home because Detective McHeartley was a man who did everything he promised.

## Quiz

- 1) ¿Dónde fueron encontrados los cuerpos?
  - a) En una iglesia
  - b) En medio del campo
  - c) En una autopista
  - d) En sus casas
  
- 2) ¿Qué decía el informe forense?
  - a) Que habían caminado por tres días seguidos
  - b) Decía la causa de la muerte
  - c) Decía que habían sido raptados por extraterrestres
  - d) Daba toda la información necesaria
  
- 3) ¿Cuál es la mascota de McHeartley?
  - a) Un oso
  - b) Un gato
  - c) Un ave
  - d) Un perro
  
- 4) ¿Por qué murieron los jóvenes?
  - a) Por intoxicación de un hongo
  - b) Por la picadura de un mosquito
  - c) Fueron asesinados
  - d) No se sabe
  
- 5) ¿Cuántas latas de atún le compró el detective a su mascota?
  - a) 5
  - b) 10
  - c) 3
  - d) 9

## Answers -

- 1) C
- 2) A
- 3) B
- 4) A

5) B

## **Vocabulario/Vocabulary**

- *Autopista* --- Highway
- *Automóvil/Camión* --- Car/truck
- *Copas de los árboles* --- Tree crows
- *Gotas* --- Drops
- *Pavimento* --- Pavement
- *Carretera* --- Road
- *Desesperados* --- Desperate
- *Policía* --- Police
- *Escena del crimen* --- Crime scene
- *Fotografías* --- Pictures
- *Información* --- Information
- *Pacto de silencio* --- Pact of silence
- *Vocero* --- Spokesman
- *Declaraciones* --- Declarations
- *Intentos* --- Try
- *Orgullo* --- Pride
- *Oficina* --- Office
- *Escritorio* --- Desk
- *Gato* --- Cat
- *Encima* --- Over
- *Esquina* --- Corner
- *Fiel* --- Faithful
- *Domingo* --- Sunday
- *Hogar* --- Home
- *Semana* --- Week



- *Mascota* --- Pet
- *Desesperado* --- Desperate
- *Auricular* --- Handset
- *Fastidio* --- Nuisance
- *Ánimos* --- Moods
- *Transmite* --- Transmit
- *Noticias* --- News
- *Días llenos de tensión* --- Days filled with tension
- *Tortura* --- Torture
- *Cuerpos* --- Bodies
- *Culpable* --- Guilty
- *Apresarlo* --- Arrest
- *Micrófono* --- Microphone
- *Atril* --- Lectern
- *Asesinados* --- Murdered
- *Naves espaciales* --- Spaceships
- *Agentes secretos* --- Secret agents
- *Siniestro* --- Sinister
- *Candidato* --- Candidate
- *Hongo* --- Fungus
- *Transmisión* --- Broadcast
- *Conferencia* --- Conference
- *Indicaba* --- Indicate
- *Rastros del veneno* --- Traces of poison
- *Posibilidades* --- Possibilities
- *Presupuesto* --- Budget
- *Entrenamiento* --- Training
- *Sueldos* --- Salaries

- *Arrinconado* --- Concerned

## 16. Playa, Salsa Y Ron

*Nunca había imaginado que había tantos tonos de azul hasta que volé sobre el mar Caribe. Desde el cielo parece una gran piscina color turquesa con manchas de azul profundo, verde y hasta morado. A lo lejos, las arenas blancas brillaban como si se tratara de un desierto de sal.*

I had never imagined that there were so many shades of blue until I flew over the Caribbean Sea. From the sky it looks like a large turquoise pool with spots of deep blue, green and even purple. In the distance, the white sands shone as if it were a salt desert.

*Antes de salir de los Estados Unidos, raramente había pensado en visitar las islas del Caribe; lo único que sabía de la región era que había muchos cruceros de lujo que llevaban a cientos de turistas desde Miami a tomar el sol en sus playas y eso no era algo que llamara especialmente mi atención. No fue sino hasta justo antes de terminar mi curso de español en Guatemala, cuando hablando con Pierre sobre las maravillas naturales de islas como Dominica y San Vicente, la música, el baile y la cultura de Cuba, que comencé a convencerme de que el Caribe sería mi siguiente destino.*

Before leaving the United States, he had rarely thought of visiting the Caribbean islands; The only thing I knew about the region was that there were many luxury cruises that took hundreds of tourists from Miami to sunbathe on their beaches and that was not something that caught my attention. It wasn't until just before finishing my Spanish course in Guatemala, when talking with Pierre about the natural wonders of islands like Dominica and San Vicente, the music, dance and culture of Cuba, that I began to convince myself that the Caribbean It would be my next destination.

*Salí desde la Ciudad de Guatemala en un vuelo directo a La Habana donde tenía planeado estar un par de semanas, después me encontraría con Pierre y Kristen en República Dominicana. Sólo el viaje en avión sobre el mar era ya increíble... apenas podía imaginarme lo bellas que se verían esas aguas de cerca.*

I left from Guatemala City on a direct flight to Havana where I planned to be a couple of weeks, then I would meet Pierre and Kristen in the Dominican Republic. Only the trip by plane over the sea was already incredible ... I could hardly imagine how beautiful those waters would look from close.

*Cuba era el tercer país que visitaba. Ahora me sentía muy cómodo viajando, mi español era mucho mejor y ya sabía moverme fácilmente, claro con la ayuda de mi teléfono celular y mi GPS. Sin embargo, Pierre me advirtió que Cuba era un país muy diferente al resto del mundo. De eso yo ya sabía algo pues lo hablamos en mis clases de política internacional, pero no me imaginaba cómo sería la experiencia de un viajero en el país.*

Cuba was the third country I visited. Now I felt very comfortable traveling, my Spanish was much better and I knew how to move easily, of course with the help of my cell phone and my GPS. However, Pierre warned me that Cuba was a very different country from the rest of the world. I already knew something about that because we talked about it in my international politics classes, but I couldn't imagine what a traveler's experience in the country would be like.

*Al llegar, me sorprendió el hecho de que hubiese dos monedas diferentes, el peso cubano y el peso cubano convertible. Según me explicaba el chófer del taxi que tomé fuera del aeropuerto, una era para uso exclusivo de los extranjeros y la otra para los cubanos - "así es el sistema," afirmó.*

*El mismo taxista, un hombre muy simpático de tez morena y enorme sonrisa llamado Juan, me explicó que los únicos alojamientos accesibles que podría encontrar en la isla serían en casas particulares. Algunas personas en cada ciudad, me contaba, tienen permiso para rentar habitaciones en sus casas y departamentos como si se tratara de un hotel.*

Upon arrival, I was surprised that there were two different currencies, the Cuban peso and the convertible Cuban peso. As explained by the driver of the taxi that I took outside the airport, one was for the exclusive use of foreigners and the other for Cubans - "this is the system," he said.

The same taxi driver, a very nice man with a dark complexion and a huge smile called Juan, explained that the only accessible accommodations I could find on the island would be in private homes. Some people in each

city, he told me, have permission to rent rooms in their homes and apartments as if it were a hotel.

*“O bueno, más bien la versión original de airbnb,” dije en voz alta, tras lo que él me miró confundido y no respondió.*

"Or well, rather the original version of airbnb," I said out loud, after which he looked at me confused and did not respond.

*Así, Juan me llevó a una de las famosas casas particulares y dijo - “Mira, así es como reconoces las oficiales - tienen ese símbolo azul en la puerta”.*

Thus, Juan took me to one of the famous private houses and said - "Look, this is how you recognize the officers - they have that blue symbol on the door."

*Muy amablemente se bajó conmigo y negoció el precio de la habitación, después me dio recomendaciones sobre qué lugares visitar, qué ver y comer en La Habana. Entonces, tras sólo una hora de haber llegado a Cuba, ya tenía hospedaje, plan para los siguientes días y una muy buena impresión de los taxistas cubanos.*

He kindly got off with me and negotiated the price of the room, then gave me recommendations on what places to visit and what to see and eat in Havana. Then, after only an hour of having arrived in Cuba, I already had lodging, a plan for the following days and a very good impression of the Cuban taxi drivers.

*Estaba cansado del viaje, pero no podía esperar más para recorrer las calles de la ciudad, así que sólo dejé mi mochila, me cambié mis pantalones por bermudas, mis botas por sandalias y me aventuré por las calles del centro.*

I was tired of the trip, but I couldn't wait any longer to walk the streets of the city, so I just left my backpack, changed my pants for shorts, my boots for sandals and ventured through the streets of downtown.

*Mi alojamiento estaba en el casco histórico de la ciudad. Justo al salir me topé con muchas callecitas que llevaban a pequeñas plazas y rincones pintorescos. Pasé frente a decenas de restaurantes y en cada uno de ellos había una banda de músicos tocando los clásicos de la música cubana*

*mientras todo el mundo cantaba y bailaba a su alrededor. ¡Cómo me gustaría saber bailar así! Pensé.*

My accommodation was in the historic center of the city. Just as I left, I came across many streets that led to small squares and picturesque corners. I passed dozens of restaurants and in each of them there was a band of musicians playing the classics of Cuban music while everyone sang and danced around them. How I would like to know how to dance like this! I thought.

*Caminé por horas y cuando menos lo esperaba, empezó a oscurecer, así que entré a un pequeño restaurante camino a mi alojamiento. Cuando vi el menú no tenía idea de qué era nada de lo que estaba escrito allí. La mesera se acercó y me preguntó –*

I walked for hours and when I least expected it, it began to get dark, so I entered a small restaurant on my way to my accommodation. When I saw the menu I had no idea what it was that was written there. The waitress came over and asked me -

*“¿Qué le sirvo, chico?” A lo que yo me quedé mudo, entonces volvió a preguntar “¿Quiere que le recomiende algo?”*

"What do I do for you, boy?" To which I was speechless, then he asked again "Do you want me to recommend something?"

*“¡Sí, por favor!” contesté.*

"¡Yes, please!" I replied.

*“Bueno, le traigo un plato de ropa vieja”.*

"Well, I bring you a plate of old clothes"

*“¿Ropa? Pero yo quiero comida”.*

"Clothes? But I want food."

*“Bueno, ya viene.”*

*“Jaja, sí, pero la ropa vieja es comida, es un platillo típico cubano, ¿usted come carne?”*

"Haha, yes, but old clothes are food, it's a typical Cuban dish, do you eat meat?"

*“Sí, ropa no, pero carne sí”.*

"Yes, clothes no, but meat yes."

*“Bueno, Ya viene”*

"Well, it's coming."

*Estaba un poco preocupado por lo que vendría, pero el olor que salía de la cocina era delicioso. Entonces vi llegar un gran plato de carne con arroz y frijoles, y al lado, un plátano frito, se veía genial.*

I was a little worried about what would come, but the smell coming out of the kitchen was delicious. Then I saw a large plate of meat with rice and beans arrive, and next to it, a fried banana, looked great.

*“¿Un vaso de ron?” preguntó la mesera.*

"A glass of rum?" The waitress asked.

*“¿Por qué no?” contesté.*

"Why not?" I replied.

*Tras el delicioso manjar, estaba listo para ir a dormir. Caminé por un par de calles, pero justo una esquina antes de llegar, escuché una música estridente y con un ritmo contagioso saliendo desde un pequeño pasillo. Curioso, me acerqué a ver. Adentro había una gran sala de baile; con trompetas, percusiones, violines y guitarras, una orquesta entera de salsa tocaba la mejor música que había escuchado en mi vida.*

After the delicious delicacy, I was ready to go to sleep. I walked down a couple of streets but just one corner before arriving, I heard a loud music and with a contagious rhythm coming from a small hallway. Curious, I went to see. Inside was a large dance hall; With trumpets, percussions, violins and guitars, an entire salsa orchestra played the best music I had heard in my life.

*Me acerqué a la barra y pedí un mojito mientras observaba impresionado a la banda tocar con tanta alegría y pasión, y a la gente que bailaba tan bien*

*que parecía ser una coreografía preparada con anterioridad. Sus pies se movían tan rápido que era difícil seguirlos, su energía y felicidad se transmitían, y no pude evitar sentirme feliz y con ganas de bailar. Entonces, sentí que tocaban mi espalda y salté del susto.*

I approached the bar and asked for a mojito while watching the band impressed to play with such joy and passion, and the people who danced so well that it seemed to be a choreography prepared beforehand. His feet moved so fast that it was difficult to follow them, his energy and happiness were transmitted, and I couldn't help feeling happy and wanting to dance. Then, I felt that they touched my back and jumped in fright.

*“Hola, ¿bailas?” me preguntaba una chica hermosa.*

"Hello, are you dancing?" A beautiful girl asked me.

*Me quedé congelado y ruborizado. De repente, me olvidé de cómo hablar español.*

I froze and flushed. Suddenly, I forgot how to speak Spanish.

*“Bueno, al menos ¿hablas?” preguntó.*

"Well, at least you speak?" She asked.

*Regresé de mi trance y respondí - “sí, sí, claro que hablo, pero la verdad no sé bailar, aunque me gustaría mucho”.*

I returned from my trance and replied - "Yes, yes, of course I speak, but I really do not know how to dance, although I would like very much."

*“Yo te enseño,” dijo y yo de nuevo me ruboricé.*

"I teach you," he said and I blushed again.

*“¿De verdad?” pregunté.*

"Really?" I asked.

*“Sí, anda, vamos a bailar, ¿cómo te llamas?”*

"Yes, come on, let's dance, what's your name?"

*“Peter, me llamo Peter”.*



"Peter, my name is Peter."

*"Yo soy Daylin".*

"I am Daylin."

*Caminamos a la pista de baile y yo casi temblaba de nervios y emoción. Traté de bailar, pero mis pies parecían no coordinar con la música, y aunque intentaba e intentaba, resultaba imposible. Daylin sonrió y dijo - "Tranquilo, vamos poco a poco. Mira, intenta sólo lo básico, escucha el ritmo. Un dos, un dos tres, un dos, un dos tres". Lo intenté de nuevo y pisé sus pies.*

We walked to the dance floor and I was almost trembling with nerves and emotion. I tried to dance, but my feet seemed not to coordinate with the music, and although I tried and tried, it was impossible. Daylin smiled and said - "Quiet, let's go slowly. Look, try just the basics, listen to the beat. One two, one two three, one two, one two three." I tried again and stepped on his feet.

*"Daylin, ¿estás bien? Lo siento mucho".*

"Daylin, are you alright? I'm sorry".

*"Sí, no pasa nada, no te preocupes, si quieres sentémonos un rato".*

"Yes, nothing happens, don't worry, if you want, let's sit down for a while."

*"De verdad, ¿estás bien? Estoy muy apenado, es la primera vez que bailo este tipo de música".*

"You are really fine? I'm very sorry, it's the first time I dance this kind of music."

*"Pues ¿de dónde eres?" preguntó Daylin.*

"Well, where are you from?" Daylin asked.

*"De los Estados Unidos, pero de un pueblo muy pequeño. Allá los viejos escuchan música country y los jóvenes, pop. A mí me gusta la música clásica, pero de esto no sé nada".*

"From the United States, but from a very small town. There the old people listen to country music and the young people, pop. I like classical music,

but I don't know anything about this.”

“*Vaya, hablas muy bien español, pensaba que eras latino*”.

"Wow, you speak Spanish very well, I thought you were Latino."

“*¡Gracias!, eres muy amable y muy linda. Me siento muy tonto, me gustaría mucho bailar contigo. Prometo compensarte, ¿te gustaría salir algún día conmigo?*”

“Thank you! You are very kind and very pretty. I feel very silly, I would very much like to dance with you. I promise to compensate you; would you like to go out with me one day?”

“*¡Pero qué rápido eres!*” dijo sonriendo. “*Bueno, por qué no, pero no vamos a bailar más ¿verdad?*”

"But how fast you are!" He said smiling. "Well, why not, but we won't dance anymore, right?"

“*Jaja, no, por ahora no*”.

"Haha, no, not for now."

“*Este es mi número, llámame,*” dijo mientras me entregaba una servilleta con su número telefónico.

"This is my number, call me," he said as he handed me a napkin with his phone number.

“*¡Te llamo!*”

"I'll call you!"

*Salí del bar un poco mareado por los mojitos, la música y el calor, apenado pero contento. Mientras caminaba, pensaba en Daylin, ella era la chica más linda que había visto, su cabello largo y rizado la hacía parecer una sirena, su brillante sonrisa me había hipnotizado. Vaya, pensé, creo que debo dormir.*

I left the bar a little dizzy from the mojitos, the music and the heat, sorry but happy. As I walked, I thought of Daylin, she was the prettiest girl I had ever seen, her long curly hair made her look like a mermaid, her bright smile had mesmerized me. Wow, I thought, I think I should sleep.

*Llegué a mi habitación fatigado. Apenas podía creer que había llegado a Cuba ese mismo día; tenía una sensación extraña - aunque La Habana no podía ser más diferente a mi lugar de origen, me sentía como en casa.*

I arrived at my room tired. I could hardly believe that I had arrived in Cuba that same day; I had a strange feeling - although Havana could not be more different from my place of origin, I felt at home.

*A la mañana siguiente estaba cansado, pero con muchos ánimos. Había decidido tomarme el día para relajarme y pensar, así que tomé la recomendación de mi taxista del día anterior y me dirigí hacia Varadero, la playa más famosa cerca de La Habana. Tomé un autobús colectivo y en dos horas, de las cuales dormí una y media, ya estaba ahí.*

The next morning I was tired, but with much encouragement. I had decided to take the day to relax and think, so I took my taxi driver's recommendation from the previous day and headed towards Varadero, the most famous beach near Havana. I took a bus and in two hours, of which I slept half past one, I was already there.

*En Varadero vi por primera vez los azules profundos que pude notar desde el avión, la playa era realmente paradisíaca. Tiré mi toalla en la arena y sentí en mi piel el calor del sol del Caribe. Mientras me relajaba escuchando las olas del mar, pensaba en Daylin. Quería verla pronto pero aún estaba muy apenado de mi terrible actuación como bailarín y quería hacer algo al respecto.*

In Varadero I saw for the first time the deep blues that I could notice from the plane, the beach was really paradise. I threw my towel in the sand and felt the heat of the Caribbean sun on my skin. As I relaxed listening to the waves of the sea, I thought of Daylin. I wanted to see her soon but I was still very sorry for my terrible performance as a dancer and I wanted to do something about it.

*Tras nadar un poco en el mar, pude notar que había también cientos de peces de colores a mi alrededor, aunque no podía verlos bien porque el agua salada lastimaba mis ojos. Al salir del mar, noté que había barcos en la orilla de la playa ofreciendo tours de esnórquel... no lo dude ni un segundo y tomé uno. Minutos después me encontraba nadando entre peces de todas formas y colores, inclusive llegué a ver una hermosa tortuga y*

*también una mantarraya. Nadé por horas, y al salir del agua, relajado y feliz, tuve una revelación - “¡tengo que tomar clases de salsa!” me dije a mi mismo.*

After swimming a little in the sea, I noticed that there were also hundreds of goldfish around me, although I couldn't see them well because the salt water hurt my eyes. Upon leaving the sea, I noticed that there were boats on the shore of the beach offering snorkeling tours ... do not hesitate for a second and I took one. Minutes later I was swimming among fish of all shapes and colors, I even got to see a beautiful turtle and also a stingray. I swam for hours, and out of the water, relaxed and happy, I had a revelation - "I have to take salsa classes!" I said to myself.

*Tomé el autobús de regreso a La Habana, llegué a mi habitación, tomé un baño y salí decidido a aprender a bailar. Caminé por todos los restaurantes y bares con música que había visto la noche anterior y ahí vi un letrero en la entrada de uno de los lugares que decía - “Clases de salsa para principiantes”.*

I took the bus back to Havana, arrived at my room, took a bath and left determined to learn to dance. I walked through all the restaurants and bars with music I had seen the night before and there I saw a sign at the entrance of one of the places that said - “Salsa classes for beginners”.

*Pasaron tres días desde la noche que conocí a Daylin. Aún no me había decidido a llamarla, pero había pasado el día entero en el salón de baile, y claro, no era un profesional, pero al menos ya no lastimaría sus pies. Mi maestra de baile era una mujer mayor muy amable y platicadora, se llamaba Carolina, y durante los tres días que había tomado clases con ella, se había tomado muy en serio el poder convertirme en un bailarín, pues según ella, el baile es la mejor forma de comunicación del mundo porque sin ninguna palabra, puedes decir mucho.*

Three days have passed since the night I met Daylin. I still hadn't decided to call her, but I had spent the whole day in the ballroom, and of course, I wasn't a professional, but at least I wouldn't hurt her feet anymore. My dance teacher was a very kind and talkative older woman, her name was Carolina, and during the three days I had taken classes with her, she had taken seriously to become a dancer, because according to her, dancing is the

best form of communication in the world because without any word, you can say a lot.

*Tras el fin de mi tercera clase, platicamos por horas, me contó sobre su juventud bailando con el ballet folklórico cubano y sobre cómo solía viajar por el mundo entero.*

After the end of my third class, we talked for hours, he told me about his youth dancing with Cuban folk ballet and about how he used to travel the world.

*“Lo que haces es muy importante. Toda la gente debería poder viajar por el mundo. Eso cambia tu forma de ver las cosas, de vivir, te hace más tolerante, más sabio, sencillo y capaz de arriesgarte. Mira tú, cuándo hubieses pensado que te esforzarías tanto por aprender a bailar por una chica bonita y no me digas que no es cierto que aprendes por una chica”.*

“What you do is very important. All people should be able to travel the world. That changes your way of seeing things, of living, makes you more tolerant, wiser, simple and capable of taking risks. Look, when you would have thought that you would try so hard to learn to dance for a pretty girl and don't tell me that it is not true that you learn for a girl.”

*Me ruboricé y contesté - “En tan pocos días, Carolina, me has llegado a conocer mucho”.*

I blushed and replied - "In so few days, Carolina, you've got to know me a lot."

*“Te diré algo, chico, tienes un buen corazón, no tienes que ser el mejor bailarín del mundo para que esa chica se fije en ti. Anda, ya has progresado mucho, ahora llámala”.*

“I'll tell you something, boy, you have a good heart, you don't have to be the best dancer in the world for that girl to notice you. Come on, you've already made a lot of progress, now call her.”

*“Lo haré, Carolina, muchas gracias por todo”.*

"I will, Carolina, thank you very much for everything."

*Salí de mi clase y tomé el teléfono entre mis manos, no podía esperar un segundo más.*

I left my class and took the phone in my hands, I couldn't wait another second.

*“Bueno, ¿Daylin?”*

"Well, Daylin?"

*“Ella habla, ¿Quién llama?”*

"She talks, who's calling?"

*“Soy yo, Peter, ¿me recuerdas?, del bar la otra noche, pisé tus pies...”*

"It's me, Peter, remember me? From the bar the other night, I stepped on your feet ..."

*“Jaja, pero claro, Peter, claro que me acuerdo de ti. Yo pensaba que ya no me llamarías, han pasado ya varios días”.*

“Haha, but of course, Peter, of course I remember you. I thought you wouldn't call me anymore; it's been several days.”

*“Sí, lo siento, estuve muy ocupado los días anteriores, pero ahora estoy libre, ¿te gustaría ir a cenar conmigo?”*

"Yes, I'm sorry, I was very busy the previous days, but now I'm free, would you like to go to dinner with me?"

*“Claro, vamos”.*

"Sure, let's go".

*Quedamos en encontrarnos unas horas más tarde en el barrio viejo. Elegí un lugar tranquilo, frente a una plaza muy linda. Yo llegué muy puntual, pero pasaban más de diez minutos después de la hora acordada y Daylin no llegaba. Comenzaba a resignarme y a pensar que mi actuación del otro día había sido tan terrible que ella se había arrepentido de verme, pero unos minutos después, ahí estaba, caminando a prisa, tan linda como la recordaba.*

We agreed to meet a few hours later in the old neighborhood. I chose a quiet place, in front of a very pretty square. I arrived very punctual, but it was more than ten minutes after the agreed time and Daylin did not arrive. I was beginning to resign myself and think that my performance the other day had been so terrible that she had regretted seeing me, but a few minutes later, there I was, walking in a hurry, as pretty as I remembered her.

*Cenamos y conversamos por horas, el tiempo parecía pasar volando. Después de haber estado en el restaurante por un largo rato, tomé valor y la invité a bailar.*

We had dinner and talked for hours, time seemed to fly by. After having been in the restaurant for a long time, I took courage and invited her to dance.

“¿A bailar? ¿estás seguro?”

"To dance? are you sure?"

“Sí, a bailar, tengo una sorpresa para ti”.

"Yes, to dance, I have a surprise for you."

“¿De verdad? Estoy intrigada”.

"Really? I am intrigued".

“Entonces vamos”.

"So, let's go".

*Nos dirigimos al mismo lugar de la última vez y ahí estaba de nuevo la orquesta tocando en todo su esplendor. Justo tras entrar la llevé a la pista de baile y le mostré mis nuevos pasos. Daylin no lo podía creer, sonreía y repetía junto a mí los pasos. Bailamos toda la noche y después la llevé de la mano de regreso a su casa, me sentía en un sueño.*

We went to the same place last time and there was the orchestra playing again in all its splendor. Right after entering I took her to the dance floor and showed her my new steps. Daylin could not believe it, he smiled and repeated the steps with me. We danced all night and then I took her hand back to her house, I felt in a dream.

*Pasé la siguiente semana entera con Daylin, me llevó a los mejores salones de baile, a comer tamales, me enseñó a preparar ropa vieja, fuimos juntos en bicicleta desde el centro de La Habana hasta Varadero, vimos tortugas y estrellas de mar. Un fin de semana tomamos un autobús y nos fuimos hasta Cienfuegos, vimos la vida del campo en Cuba, comimos cocos y compartimos con los campesinos. No quería que mi viaje por Cuba terminara.*

I spent the next week with Daylin, he took me to the best dance halls, to eat tamales, he taught me how to prepare old clothes, we went together by bicycle from the center of Havana to Varadero, we saw turtles and starfish. One weekend we took a bus and went to Cienfuegos, saw the country life in Cuba, ate coconuts and shared with the farmers. I didn't want my trip to Cuba to end.

*Al regresar a La Habana, recibí una llamada de teléfono, era Pierre -*

Upon returning to Havana, I received a phone call, it was Pierre -

*“Peter ¿estás bien?”*

"Peter are you alright?"

*“Sí, ¡muy bien!”*

"Yes very good!"

*“Kristen y yo estábamos preocupados. Llevamos días tratando de llamarte, pero tu teléfono no tenía recepción. Estamos esperándote en San Juan desde hace tres días”.*

“Kristen and I were worried. We have been trying to call you for days, but your phone had no reception. We have been waiting for you in San Juan for three days.”

*“Lo siento, me había olvidado completamente”.*

"Sorry, I had completely forgotten."

*“De verdad? Pero ¿cómo que te habías olvidado?”*

"Really? But how could you have forgotten?"



*“Es una larga historia, te contaré cuando nos veamos. La verdad es que será muy difícil despedirme de esta ciudad, pero mi viaje debe continuar”.*

“It's a long story, I'll tell you when we meet. The truth is that it will be very difficult to say goodbye to this city, but my journey must continue.”

*“Bueno, espero escuchar tu historia pronto, aquí te esperamos.”*

"Well, I hope to hear your story soon, here we are waiting for you."

*Me despedí con mucha tristeza de Daylin y de La Habana, y compré mi vuelo hacia República Dominicana, donde Pierre y Kristen me esperaban. Daylin me llevó hasta el aeropuerto en el auto de su padre, nos despedimos con un largo abrazo y le prometí que regresaría.*

I said goodbye very sadly to Daylin and Havana, and bought my flight to the Dominican Republic, where Pierre and Kristen were waiting for me. Daylin took me to the airport in his father's car, we said goodbye with a long hug and promised to return.

## **Quiz**

1. ¿Desde dónde viajó Peter a Cuba?
  - a) Puerto Rico
  - b) Ciudad de México
  - c). República Dominicana
  - d) Guatemala
2. ¿Qué es ropa vieja?
  - a) Un disfraz
  - b) Comida
  - c) Vestuario
  - d) Postre
3. ¿Dónde conoció Peter a Daylin?
  - a) La escuela
  - b) La calle
  - c) El salón de baile
  - d) La oficina
4. ¿Qué aprendió Peter para conquistar a Daylin?

- a) A hablar español
- b) A bailar
- c) A cantar
- d) A cocinar

5. ¿Cuánto tiempo estuvo Peter en Cuba?

- a) Dos años
- b) Dos semanas
- c) Dos meses
- d) Dos días

### **Answers**

- 1)D
- 2)B
- 3)C
- 4)B
- 5)B

### **Vocabulary / Vocabulario**

- *Tonos* --- Tones
- *Volé* --- Flew
- *Piscina* --- Pool
- *Turquesa* --- Turquoise
- *Manchas* --- Spots
- *Morado* --- Purple
- *Arenas* --- Sands
- *Raramente* --- Rarely
- *Cruceros de lujo* --- Luxury cruises
- *Maravillas* --- Wonders
- *Destino* --- Destination

- *Cómodo* --- Comfortable
- *Viajero* --- Traveler
- *Monedas* --- Currencies
- *Tez* --- Complexion
- *Alojamiento* --- Accommodation
- *Departamento s* --- Flats
- *Amablemente* --- Kindly
- *Recomendaciones* --- Suggestions
- *Centro* --- Downtown
- *Casco histórico* --- Old town
- *Plazas* --- Squares
- *Mesera* --- Waitress
- *Mudo* --- Mute
- *Ropa* --- Clothes
- *Olor* --- Smell
- *Arroz* --- Rice
- *Plátano frito* --- Fried plantain
- *Ron* --- Rum
- *Manjar* --- Feast
- *Estridente* --- Loud
- *Contagioso* --- Contagious
- *Pasillo* --- Hallway
- *Trompetas* --- Trumpets
- *Barra* --- Bar
- *Alegría* --- Joy
- *Anterioridad* --- Beforehand
- *Pies* --- Feet
- *Felicidad* --- Happiness

- *Bailar* --- To dance
- *Espalda* --- Back
- *Susto* --- Fright
- *Hermosa* --- Beautiful
- *Congelado* --- Frozen
- *Me gustaría* --- I would like
- *Enseño* --- Teach
- *Ruboricé* --- Blushed
- *Temblaba* --- Trembled
- *Ritmo* --- Rhythm
- *Pisé sus pies* --- Stepped on her feet
- *No te preocupes* --- Don't worry
- *Tonto* --- Foolish
- *Compensarte* --- Make it up to you
- *¿Te gustaría salir algún día conmigo?* --- Would you like to go out with me someday?
- *Servilleta* --- Napkin
- *Calor* --- Heat
- *Linda* --- Pretty
- *Sirena* --- Mermaid
- *Hipnotizado* --- Mesmerized
- *Fatigado* --- Exhausted
- *Cerca* --- Near
- *Paradisíaca* --- Idyllic
- *Pronto* --- Soon
- *Bailarín* --- Dancer
- *Nadar* --- Swim
- *Peces* --- Fish (alive)

- *Agua salada* --- Salt Water
- *Orilla* --- Shore
- *Mantarraya* --- Stingray
- *Habitación* --- Room
- *Letrero* --- Sign
- *Principiantes* --- Beginners
- *Lastimaría* --- Hurt
- *Maestra de baile* --- Dance teacher
- *Mujer mayor* --- Older woman
- *Platicadora* --- Talkative
- *Juventud* --- Youth
- *Tolerante* --- Tolerant
- *Sabio* --- Wise
- *Sencillo* --- Humble
- *Arriesgarte* --- Take risks
- *Esforzarías* --- Work hard
- *¿Quién llama?* --- Who is calling?
- *Ocupado* --- Busy
- *Hora acordada* --- Agreed time
- *Resignarme* --- Resign
- *Arrepentido* --- Regretted
- *A prisa* --- In a hurry
- *Conversamos* --- Chatted
- *Valor* --- Courage
- *¿Estás seguro?* --- Are you sure?
- *Intrigada* --- Intrigued
- *Esplendor* --- Glory
- *Pista de baile* --- Dance Floor

- *Pasos* --- Moves
- *Estrella de mar* --- Starfish
- *Cocos* --- Coconuts
- *Campesinos* --- Farmer
- *Recepción* --- Signal
- *Abrazo* --- Hug
- *Prometí* --- Promised

# Conclusion

We hope you had a blast reading these fun and silly stories and that you are more confident in reading and understanding the Spanish language.

It is important to not be too hard on yourself if it seems like there are some words and phrase that you are having trouble with. It is only natural when you are learning new things. Use any frustration that you have to push you to work harder, especially those that cause problems. It is a process to learn a foreign language, and it is going to take dedicated practice.

Take all opportunities to practice Spanish as you go about your day. This will help to solidify the words in your mind, and you will also perfect your pronunciation as well.

Remember that it is also useful to involve a family member or friend. This way, you can practice together, as well as test each other. You both will enjoy the experience and learn a new language together.

Follow the guidelines found in the introduction to learn Spanish quickly so that you can speak with native speakers around the world. Remember that it can be an advantage in the workplace, when you are meeting new friends, or when you are traveling. Learning a new language is never going to be a waste. And you will continue to have fun with the language the more that you learn.

Do you want to continue learning? The perfect match for this book is the **Learn Spanish for Beginners** also edited by Fernández Language Institute. Also, a Short Stories Volume 2 For Intermediate and Advanced level, will be released soon.